

Construction Document Specifications

January 20, 2021

CITY OF MUSKEGON

COMU Water Filtration Plant Muskegon, Michigan

Prepared by:



ABONMARCHE
95 W. Main St.
Benton Harbor, MI 49022
269.927.2295
ACI Project #19-1436B

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TITLE SHEET

COVID-19 CONSIDERATIONS

CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY SAFETY COALITION RECOMMENDATIONS: COVID-19 EXPOSURE PREVENTION, PREPAREDNESS, AND RESPONSE PLAN FOR CONSTRUCTION

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 00 0115 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

~~SECTION 00 0120 - LIST OF SCHEDULES~~

~~SECTION 00 0140 - ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS~~

~~SECTION 00 0140 - INVITATION TO BID~~

~~SECTION 00 0140 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS~~

~~SECTION 00 0210 - SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS~~

~~SECTION 00 2010 - PREBID MEETING~~

~~SECTION 00 2000 - PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES~~

~~SECTION 00 4110 - BID FORM - GUARANTEED SUM (MULTIPLE PRIME CONTRACTS)~~

~~SECTION 00 4220 - UNIT PRICES FORM~~

~~SECTION 00 4320 - ALTERNATES FORM~~

~~SECTION 00 4330 - LIST OF TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION~~

~~SECTION 00 4340 - PROPOSED SCHEDULE OF PERFORMANCE~~

~~SECTION 00 4350 - SUPPLEMENTAL NON-COLLISION LETTERS~~

~~SECTION 00 440 - SUPPLEMENTAL NON-COLLISION LETTERS - CONTRACTORS~~

~~SECTION 00 5000 - CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS~~

~~SECTION 00 5100 - NOTICE OF AWARD~~

~~SECTION 00 6000 - SUPPLEMENTAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT~~

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01 1000 - SUMMARY

SECTION 01 2300 - ALTERNATES

SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

SECTION 01 2900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

SECTION 01 3200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

SECTION 01 4000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01 4333.75 - ROOFING & WATERPROOFING MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

SECTION 01 5000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

SECTION 01 6000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01 7300 - EXECUTION

SECTION 01 7419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

SECTION 01 7839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

SECTION 02 4119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

REDACTED

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

SECTION 03 3000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

SECTION 04 0120.63 - BRICK MASONRY REPAIR

SECTION 04 0120.64 - BRICK MASONRY REPOINTING

SECTION 04 0140.61 - STONE REPAIR

SECTION 04 2000 UNIT MASONRY

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 1200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

SECTION 06 1000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION 07 0150.19 - PREPARATION FOR REROOFING

SECTION 07 2100 - ROOF INSULATION

SECTION 07 549 - SUMMARY OF WORK BITUMINUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

SECTION 07 550 - MODIFIED BITUMINUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

SECTION 07 7200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

SECTION 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION 08 5113 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION 09 9113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

COVID-19 CONSIDERATIONS

Due to the ongoing coronavirus (covid-19) health crisis, it is required that all parties involved with the project known as the 19-1436A COMU Water Filtration Plant respect and adhere to the current executive orders of the State of Michigan and provide all required compliance procedures and reporting.

In the event of a change in status which prevents in person gatherings, the architect will advise all parties of changes in procedure and reporting necessary to comply with requirements.

Project contractors will adhere to any and all precautionary measures associated with the governor's current executive orders and state reopening plan phase and will be required to provide a copy of your company's preparedness and response plan prior to Award of contract. See sample plan provided in the next section for example.

Thank you for your attention to this important matter.

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

Construction Industry Safety Coalition Recommendations: COVID-19 Exposure Prevention, Preparedness, and Response Plan for Construction

The purpose of this plan is to outline the steps that every employer and employee can take to reduce the risk of exposure to COVID-19. The plan describes how to prevent worker exposure to coronavirus, protective measures to be taken on the jobsite, personal protective equipment and work practice controls to be used, cleaning and disinfecting procedures, and what to do if a worker becomes sick.¹

[INSERT COMPANY NAME] takes the health and safety of our employees very seriously. With the spread of the coronavirus or “COVID-19,” a respiratory disease caused by the SARS-CoV-2 virus, we all must remain vigilant in mitigating the outbreak. This is particularly true for the construction industry, which has been deemed “essential” during this Declared National Emergency. In order to be safe and maintain operations, we have developed this COVID-19 Exposure Prevention, Preparedness, and Response Plan to be implemented throughout the Company and at all of our jobsites. We have also identified a team of employees to monitor available U.S. Center for Disease Control and Prevention (“CDC”) and Occupational Safety and Health Administration (“OSHA”) guidance on the virus.

This Plan is based on currently available information from the CDC and OSHA, and is subject to change based on further information provided by the CDC, OSHA, and other public officials. The Company may also amend this Plan based on operational needs.

I. Responsibilities of Managers and Supervisors

¹ This template COVID-19 Exposure Prevention, Preparedness, and Response Plan for Construction has been developed by the Construction Industry Safety Coalition (“CISC”). The CISC is comprised of over 25 construction industry trade associations representing all aspects of the construction industry. The CISC was formed to provide information to the Occupational Safety and Health Administration and contractors on important safety and health issues. This document is a “template” that individual contractors should review carefully and tailor to their own work and jobsites. It does not constitute legal advice and should not be construed on its own as fulfilling a contractor’s overall obligations to ensure a safe and healthful work environment. This template was prepared on March 25, 2020. As the COVID-19 outbreak develops, the information and recommendations contained in this document may change and thus, contractors should continue to monitor developments in this area.

All managers and supervisors must be familiar with this Plan and be ready to answer questions from employees. Managers and supervisors must set a good example by following this Plan at all times. This involves practicing good personal hygiene and jobsite safety practices to prevent the spread of the virus. Managers and supervisors must encourage this same behavior from all employees.

II. Responsibilities of Employees

We are asking every one of our employees to help with our prevention efforts while at work. In order to minimize the spread of COVID-19 at our jobsites, we all must play our part. As set forth below, the Company has instituted various housekeeping, social distancing, and other best practices at our jobsites. All employees must follow these. In addition, employees are expected to report to their managers or supervisors if they are experiencing signs or symptoms of COVID-19, as described below. If you have a specific question about this Plan or COVID-19, please ask your manager or supervisor. If they cannot answer the question, please contact **[ADD TITLE HERE]**.

OSHA and the CDC have provided the following control and preventative guidance to all workers, regardless of exposure risk:

- ☐ Frequently wash your hands with soap and water for at least 20 seconds. When soap and running water are unavailable, use an alcohol-based hand rub with at least 60% alcohol.
- ☐ Avoid touching your eyes, nose, or mouth with unwashed hands.
- ☐ Follow appropriate respiratory etiquette, which includes covering for coughs and sneezes.
- ☐ Avoid close contact with people who are sick.

In addition, employees must familiarize themselves with the symptoms of COVID-19:

- ☐ Coughing;
- ☐ Fever;
- ☐ Shortness of breath, difficulty breathing; and
- ☐ Early symptoms such as chills, body aches, sore throat, headache, diarrhea, nausea/vomiting, and runny nose.

If you develop a fever and symptoms of respiratory illness, such as cough or shortness of breath, DO NOT GO TO WORK and call your healthcare provider right away. Likewise, if you come into close contact with someone showing these symptoms, call your healthcare provider right away.

III. Job Site Protective Measures

The Company has instituted the following protective measures at all jobsites.

A. General Safety Policies and Rules

- Any employee/contractor/visitor showing symptoms of COVID-19 will be asked to leave the jobsite and return home.
- Safety meetings will be by telephone, if possible. If safety meetings are conducted in-person, attendance will be collected verbally and the foreman/superintendent will sign-in each attendee. Attendance will not be tracked through passed-around sign-in sheets or mobile devices. During any in-person safety meetings, avoid gathering in groups of more than 10 people and participants must remain at least six (6) feet apart.
- Employees must avoid physical contact with others and direct employees/contractors/visitors to increase personal space to at least six (6) feet, where possible. Where work trailers are used, only necessary employees should enter the trailers and all employees should maintain social distancing while inside the trailers.
- All in-person meetings will be limited. To the extent possible, meetings will be conducted by telephone.
- Employees will be encouraged to stagger breaks and lunches, if practicable, to reduce the size of any group at any one time to less than ten (10) people.
- The Company understands that due to the nature of our work, access to running water for hand washing may be impracticable. In these situations, the Company will provide, if available, alcohol-based hand sanitizers and/or wipes.
- Employees should limit the use of co-workers' tools and equipment. To the extent tools must be shared, the Company will provide alcohol-based wipes to clean tools before and after use. When cleaning tools and equipment, consult manufacturing recommendations for proper cleaning techniques and restrictions.

- Employees are encouraged to limit the need for N95 respirator use, by using engineering and work practice controls to minimize dust. Such controls include the use of water delivery and dust collection systems, as well as limiting exposure time.
- The Company will divide crews/staff into two (2) groups where possible so that projects can continue working effectively in the event that one of the divided teams is required to quarantine.
- As part of the division of crews/staff, the Company will designate employees into dedicated shifts, at which point, employees will remain with their dedicated shift for the remainder of the project. If there is a legitimate reason for an employee to change shifts, the Company will have sole discretion in making that alteration.
- Employees are encouraged to minimize ride-sharing. While in vehicle, employees must ensure adequate ventilation.
- If practicable, employees should use/drive the same truck or piece of equipment every shift.
- In lieu of using a common source of drinking water, such as a cooler, employees should use individual water bottles.

[INSERT ADDITIONAL PRECAUTIONS THAT MAY BE SPECIFIC TO YOUR BUSINESS/OPERATIONS/PROJECTS] *Additional Jobsite Safety Precautions Include:*

B. Workers entering Occupied Building and Homes

- When employees perform construction and maintenance activities within occupied homes, office buildings, and other establishments, these work locations present unique hazards with regards to COVID-19 exposures. All such workers should evaluate the specific hazards when determining best practices related to COVID-19.
- During this work, employees must sanitize the work areas upon arrival, throughout the workday, and immediately before departure. The Company will provide alcohol-based wipes for this purpose.

- Employees should ask other occupants to keep a personal distance of six (6) feet at a minimum. Workers should wash or sanitize hands immediately before starting and after completing the work.

C. Job Site Visitors

- The number of visitors to the job site, including the trailer or office, will be limited to only those necessary for the work.
- All visitors will be screened in advance of arriving on the job site. If the visitor answers “yes” to any of the following questions, he/she should not be permitted to access the jobsite:
 - Have you been confirmed positive for COVID-19?
 - Are you currently experiencing, or recently experienced, any acute respiratory illness symptoms such as fever, cough, or shortness of breath?
 - Have you been in close contact with any persons who has been confirmed positive for COVID-19?
 - Have you been in close contact with any persons who have traveled and are also exhibiting acute respiratory illness symptoms?
- Site deliveries will be permitted but should be properly coordinated in line with the employer’s minimal contact and cleaning protocols. Delivery personnel should remain in their vehicles if at all possible.

D. Personal Protective Equipment and Work Practice Controls

- In addition to regular PPE for workers engaged in various tasks (fall protection, hard hats, hearing protection), employers will also provide:
 - Gloves: Gloves should be worn at all times while on-site. The type of glove worn should be appropriate to the task. If gloves are not typically required for the task, then any type of glove is acceptable, including latex gloves. Employees should avoid sharing gloves.
 - Eye protection: Eye protection should be worn at all times while on-site.
 - **NOTE:** The CDC is currently not recommending that healthy people wear N95 respirators to prevent the spread of COVID-19. Employees should wear N95 respirators if required by the work and if available.

- Due to the current shortage of N95 respirators, the following Work Practice Controls should be followed:
 - Keep dust down by using engineering and work practice controls, specifically through the use of water delivery and dust collection systems.
 - Limit exposure time to the extent practicable.
 - Isolate workers in dusty operations by using a containment structure or distance to limit dust exposure to those employees who are conducting the tasks, thereby protecting nonessential workers and bystanders.
- Institute a rigorous housekeeping program to reduce dust levels on the jobsite.

IV. Job Site Cleaning and Disinfecting

The Company has instituted regular housekeeping practices, which includes cleaning and disinfecting frequently used tools and equipment, and other elements of the work environment, where possible. Employees should regularly do the same in their assigned work areas.

- Jobsite trailers and break/lunchroom areas will be cleaned at least once per day. Employees performing cleaning will be issued proper personal protective equipment (“PPE”), such as nitrile, latex, or vinyl gloves and gowns, as recommended by the CDC.
- Any trash collected from the jobsite must be changed frequently by someone wearing nitrile, latex, or vinyl gloves.
- Any portable jobsite toilets should be cleaned by the leasing company at least twice per week and disinfected on the inside. The Company will ensure that hand sanitizer dispensers are always filled. Frequently touched items (i.e. door pulls and toilet seats) will be disinfected frequently.
- Vehicles and equipment/tools should be cleaned at least once per day and before change in operator or rider.
- If an employee has tested positive for COVID-19, OSHA has indicated that there is typically no need to perform special cleaning or decontamination of work environments, unless those environments are visibly contaminated with blood or other bodily fluids. Notwithstanding this, the Company will clean those areas of the jobsite that a confirmed-positive individual may have come into contact with before employees can access that work space again.

- The Company will ensure that any disinfection shall be conducted using one of the following:
 - Common EPA-registered household disinfectant;
 - Alcohol solution with at least 60% alcohol; or
 - Diluted household bleach solutions (these can be used if appropriate for the surface).
- The Company will maintain Safety Data Sheets of all disinfectants used on site.

[INSERT ADDITIONAL CLEANING REQUIREMENTS IF YOU USE HAZARDOUS CHEMICALS ON SITE] *Additional Cleaning and Disinfection Guidelines Include:*

V. Jobsite Exposure Situations

- **Employee Exhibiting COVID-19 Symptoms**

If an employee exhibits COVID-19 symptoms, the employee must remain at home until he or she is symptom free for 72 hours (3 full days) without the use of fever-reducing or other symptom-altering medicines (e.g., cough suppressants). The Company will similarly require an employee that reports to work with symptoms to return home until they are symptom free for 72 hour (3 full days). To the extent practical, employees are required to obtain a doctor's note clearing them to return to work.

- **Employee Tests Positive for COVID-19**

An employee that tests positive for COVID-19 will be directed to self-quarantine away from work. Employees that test positive and are symptom free may return to work when at least seven (7) days have passed since the date of his or her first positive test, and have not had a subsequent illness. Employees that test positive and are directed to care for themselves at

home may return to work when: (1) at least 72 hours (3 full days) have passed since recovery;² and (2) at least seven (7) days have passed since symptoms first appeared. Employees that test positive and have been hospitalized may return to work when directed to do so by their medical care provider. The Company will require an employee to provide documentation clearing their return to work.

- **Employee Has Close Contact with a Tested Positive COVID-19 Individual**

Employees that have come into close contact with a confirmed-positive COVID-19 individual (co-worker or otherwise), will be directed to self-quarantine for 14 days from the last date of close contact with the carrier. Close contact is defined as six (6) feet for a prolonged period of time.

If the Company learns that an employee has tested positive, the Company will conduct an investigation into co-workers that may have had close contact with the confirmed-positive employee in the prior 14 days and direct those individuals that have had close contact with the confirmed-positive employee to self-quarantine for 14 days from the last date of close contact with the carrier. If an employee learns that he or she has come into close contact with a confirmed-positive individual outside of the workplace, he/she must alert a manager or supervisor of the close contact and also self-quarantine for 14 days from the last date of close contact with the carrier.

VI. OSHA Recordkeeping

If a confirmed case of COVID-19 is reported, the Company will determine if it meets the criteria for recordability and reportability under OSHA’s recordkeeping rule. OSHA requires construction employers to record work-related injuries and illnesses that meet certain severity criteria on the OSHA 300 Log, as well as complete the OSHA Form 301 (or equivalent) upon the occurrence of these injuries. For purposes of COVID-19, OSHA also requires employers to report to OSHA any work-related illness that (1) results in a fatality, or (2) results in the in-patient hospitalization of one or more employee. “In-patient” hospitalization is defined as a formal admission to the in-patient service of a hospital or clinic for care or treatment.

OSHA has made a determination that COVID-19 should *not* be excluded from coverage of the rule – like the common cold or the seasonal flu – and, thus, OSHA is considering it an “illness.” However, OSHA has stated that only confirmed cases of COVID-19 should be considered an illness under the rule. Thus, if an employee simply comes to work with symptoms consistent with COVID-19 (but not a confirmed diagnosis), the recordability analysis would not necessarily be triggered at that time.

² Recovery is defined as: (1) resolution of fever with the use of fever-reducing medications; and (2) improvement in respiratory symptoms (e.g., cough, shortness of breath).

If an employee has a confirmed case of COVID-19, the Company will conduct an assessment of any workplace exposures to determine if the case is work-related. Work-relatedness is presumed for illnesses that result from events or exposures in the work environment, unless it meets certain exceptions. One of those exceptions is that the illness involves signs or symptoms that surface at work but result solely from a non-work-related event or exposure that occurs *outside* of the work environment. Thus, if an employee develops COVID-19 *solely* from an exposure outside of the work environment, it would not be work-related, and thus not recordable.

The Company's assessment will consider the work environment itself, the type of work performed, risk of person-to-person transmission given the work environment, and other factors such as community spread. Further, if an employee has a confirmed case of COVID-19 that is considered work-related, the Company will report the case to OSHA if it results in a fatality within 30 days or an in-patient hospitalization within 24-hours of the exposure incident occurring.

VII. "Essential" Industry

Several States and localities are issuing orders that prohibit work and travel, except for essential businesses. In general, construction work has been deemed essential and the Company is committed to continuing operations safely. If upon your travel to and from the worksite, you are stopped by State or local authorities, you will be provided a letter that you can show the authorities indicating that you are employed in an "essential" industry and are commuting to and from work.

VIII. Confidentiality/Privacy

Except for circumstances in which the Company is legally required to report workplace occurrences of communicable disease, the confidentiality of all medical conditions will be maintained in accordance with applicable law and to the extent practical under the circumstances. When it is required, the number of persons who will be informed of an employee's condition will be kept at the minimum needed not only to comply with legally-required reporting, but also to assure proper care of the employee and to detect situations where the potential for transmission may increase. A sample notice to employees is attached to this Plan. The Company reserves the right to inform other employees that a co-worker (without disclosing the person's name) has been diagnosed with COVID-19 if the other employees might have been exposed to the disease so the employees may take measures to protect their own health.

IX. General Questions

Given the fast-developing nature of the COVID-19 outbreak, the Company may modify this Plan on a case by case basis. If you have any questions concerning this Plan, please contact **[ADD TITLE HERE.]**

Essential Industry Employee

Re: Shelter-in-Place Orders

To whom it may concern:

Please be informed that the bearer of this letter is employed at [COMPANY NAME], located at [COMPANY ADDRESS]. The Company is a [name type of contractor]. We have reviewed all applicable Orders and have determined that our operations qualify as essential/critical infrastructure and that we are able to continue to operate under those Orders.

Employees in possession of this letter have been deemed essential to the minimum basic operations of our business. All non-essential personnel have been notified to work remotely until further notice. Employees who are critical to the minimum basic operations of the business have been instructed to comply with social distancing rules/requirements in the jurisdiction, as well as other safety and health precautions.

If you have questions regarding the nature or scope of this letter, please do not hesitate to contact [insert contact name] at [insert contact number and/or email].

Sincerely,

EXECUTIVE NAME
TITLE

Employee Notification

DATE: [DATE]

TO: [CLOSE CONTACT EMPLOYEE]

FROM: [COMPANY REP]

We have been informed by one of our [employees/customer/vendor/etc] working at [SITE] that he/she has a confirmed case of COVID-19, commonly known as “Coronavirus,” based on test results obtained on [DATE]. Per company policy, this [employee/customer/vendor/etc] has been directed to self-quarantine until permitted to return to work.

We are alerting you to this development because, based on the Company’s investigation, we believe that you may have come into contact with the confirmed-positive case, on or about [DATE]. Based on Company policy we are directing you not to report to work (i.e., self-quarantine) until, at least, [14 days from last contact with confirmed case]. In the interim, we encourage you to seek medical advice and a COVID-19 test, especially if you are exhibiting symptoms of the virus.

If you do not test positive for COVID-19, or experience symptoms, by [14 days from last contact with confirmed case], you may return to work. However, please inform [COMPANY CONTACT] if any of the following occur during your self-quarantine: you experience flu- like symptoms, including fever, cough, sneezing, or sore throat; or you test positive for COVID-19.

We are committed to providing a safe environment for all of our employees and top quality service to our customers. It is in the interest of those goals that we provide this information out of an abundance of caution.

We also want to take this opportunity to remind you that one of our core values as a company is respect for and among our employees [or customers]. We will treat information regarding the identity of employees [or customers] with suspected or confirmed cases of COVID-19 as confidential to the extent practicable and will comply with applicable laws regarding the handling of such information. Further, per Company policy, we will not tolerate harassment of, or discrimination or retaliation against, employees [or anyone].

Please contact [COMPANY CONTACT AWARE OF APPROPRIATE PROTOCOLS] at [PHONE NUMBER] if you have any questions or concerns.

For more information about COVID-19, please visit the CDC website at: <http://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/index.html>

COVID-19 Checklist for Employers and Employees

Know the Symptoms of COVID-19

- ☐ Coughing, fever, shortness of breath, and difficulty breathing.
- ☐ Early symptoms may include chills, body aches, sore throat, headache, diarrhea, nausea/vomiting, and runny nose. If you develop a fever and symptoms of respiratory illness, **DO NOT GO TO WORK** and call your health-care provider immediately. Do the same thing if you come into close contact with someone showing these symptoms.

Employer Responsibilities

- ☐ Develop a COVID-19 Exposure Action Plan.
- ☐ Conduct safety meetings (toolbox talks) by phone if possible. If not, instruct employees to maintain 6-feet between each other. The foreman/supervisor will track attendance verbally rather than having employees sign an attendance sheet.
- ☐ Access to the job site and work trailer will be limited to only those necessary for the work.
- ☐ All visitors will be pre-screened to ensure they are not exhibiting symptoms.
- ☐ Employees, contractors, and visitors will be asked to leave the jobsite and return home if they are showing symptoms.
- ☐ Provide hand sanitizer and maintain Safety Data Sheets of all disinfectants used on site.
- ☐ Provide protective equipment (PPE) to any employees assigned cleaning/disinfecting tasks.
- ☐ Talk with business partners about your response plans. Share best practices with other businesses in your communities (especially those in your supply chain), chambers of commerce, and associations to improve community response efforts.

Employee Responsibilities

- ☐ Become familiar with the Exposure Action Plan and follow all elements of the Plan.
- ☐ Practice good hygiene: wash hands with soap and water for at least 20 seconds. If these are not available, use alcohol-based hand rub with at least 60% alcohol. Avoid touching your face, eyes, food, etc. with unwashed hands.

Cleaning/Disinfecting Job Sites and Other Protective Measures

- ☐ Clean and disinfect frequently used tools and equipment on a regular basis. This includes other elements of the jobsite where possible. Employees should regularly do the same in their assigned work areas.
- ☐ Clean shared spaces such as trailers and break/lunchrooms at least once per day.
- ☐ Disinfect shared surfaces (door handles, machinery controls, etc.) on a regular basis.
- ☐ Avoid sharing tools with co-workers. If not, disinfect before and after each use.
- ☐ Arrange for any portable job site toilets be cleaned by the leasing company at least twice per week and disinfected on the inside.
- ☐ Trash collected from the jobsite must be changed frequently by someone wearing gloves.

Personal Protective Equipment and Alternate Work Practice Controls

- ☐ Provide and wear the proper PPE.
- ☐ Keep the dust down by using engineering and work practice controls, specifically through the use of water delivery and dust collection systems.

COVID-19 Toolbox Talk

What is COVID-19?

The novel coronavirus, COVID-19 is one of seven types of known human coronaviruses. COVID-19, like the MERS and SARS coronaviruses, likely evolved from a virus previously found in animals. The remaining known coronaviruses cause a significant percentage of colds in adults and children, and these are not a serious threat for otherwise healthy adults.

Patients with confirmed COVID-19 infection have reportedly had mild to severe respiratory illness with symptoms such as fever, cough, and shortness of breath.

According to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (“CDC”), Chinese authorities identified an outbreak caused by a novel—or new—coronavirus. The virus can cause mild to severe respiratory illness. The outbreak began in Wuhan, Hubei Province, China, and has spread to a growing number of other countries—including the United States.

How is COVID-19 Spread?

COVID-19, like other viruses, can spread between people. Infected people can spread COVID-19 through their respiratory secretions, especially when they cough or sneeze. According to the CDC, spread from person-to-person is most likely among close contacts (about 6 feet). Person-to-person spread is thought to occur mainly *via* respiratory droplets produced when an infected person coughs or sneezes, like how influenza and other respiratory pathogens spread. These droplets can land in the mouths or noses of people who are nearby or possibly be inhaled into the lungs. It is currently unclear if a person can get COVID-19 by touching a surface or object that has the virus on it and then touching their own mouth, nose, or possibly their eyes.

In assessing potential hazards, employers should consider whether their workers may encounter someone infected with COVID-19 in the course of their duties. Employers should also determine if workers could be exposed to environments (e.g., worksites) or materials (e.g., laboratory samples, waste) contaminated with the virus.

Depending on the work setting, employers may also rely on identification of sick individuals who have signs, symptoms, and/or a history of travel to COVID-19-affected areas that indicate potential infection with the virus, in order to help identify exposure risks for workers and implement appropriate control measures.

There is much more to learn about the transmissibility, severity, and other features associated with COVID-19, and investigations are ongoing.

COVID-19 Prevention and Work Practice Controls:

Worker Responsibilities

- ☐ Frequently wash your hands with soap and water for at least 20 seconds. When soap and running water are unavailable, use an alcohol-based hand rub with at least 60% alcohol. Always wash hands that are visibly soiled.
- ☐ Cover your mouth and nose with a tissue when you cough or sneeze or use the inside of your elbow.
- ☐ Avoid touching your eyes, nose, or mouth with unwashed hands.
- ☐ Avoid close contact with people who are sick.
- Employees who have symptoms (i.e., fever, cough, or shortness of breath) should notify their supervisor and stay home—DO NOT GO TO WORK.
- ☐ Sick employees should follow [CDC-recommended steps](#). Employees should not return to work until the criteria to [discontinue home isolation](#) are met, in consultation with healthcare providers and state and local health departments.

General Job Site / Office Practices

- Clean AND disinfect frequently touched objects and surfaces such as workstations, keyboards, telephones, handrails, and doorknobs. Dirty surfaces can be cleaned with soap and water prior to disinfection. To disinfect, use [products that meet EPA's criteria for use against SARS-CoV-2](#)[external icon](#), the cause of COVID-19, and are appropriate for the surface.
- Avoid using other employees' phones, desks, offices, or other work tools and equipment, when possible. If necessary, clean and disinfect them before and after use.
- ☐ Clean and disinfect frequently used tools and equipment on a regular basis.
 - This includes other elements of the jobsite where possible.
 - Employees should regularly do the same in their assigned work areas.
- ☐ Clean shared spaces such as trailers and break/lunchrooms at least once per day.
- ☐ Disinfect shared surfaces (door handles, machinery controls, etc.) on a regular basis.
- ☐ Avoid sharing tools with co-workers if it can be avoided. If not, disinfect before and after each use.
- ☐ Arrange for any portable job site toilets to be cleaned by the

leasing company at least twice per week and disinfected on the inside.

- Any trash collected from the jobsite must be changed frequently by someone wearing gloves.
- In addition to regular PPE for workers engaged in various tasks (fall protection, hard hats, hearing protection), employers will also provide:
 - Gloves: Gloves should be worn at all times while on-site. The type of glove worn should be appropriate to the task. If gloves are not typically required for the task, then any type of glove is acceptable, including latex gloves. Gloves should not be shared if at all possible.
 - Eye protection: Eye protection should be worn at all times while on-site.

DOCUMENT 000115 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

PART 1 -

1.1 LIST OF DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings: Drawings consist of the Contract Drawings and other drawings listed on the Table of Contents page of the separately bound drawing sets titled Water Filtration Plant, Muskegon, MI and Harvey Street Booster Station, dated March 5, 2020, as modified by subsequent Addenda and Contract modifications.
- B. List of Drawings: Drawings consist of the following Contract Drawings and other drawings of type indicated.
 - 1. Water Filtration Plant
 - a. T1.1 Title Sheet
 - b. T1.2 Reference Sheet
 - c. S1.1 North Filter - Main Floor Plan
 - d. S.1.2 Clarifier - Main Floor Plan
 - e. D1.1 North Filter - Main Floor Plan
 - f. D1.1 North Filter - Demolition Roof Plan
 - g. D1.2 North Filter - Demolition Elevations & Masonry Repair
 - h. D2.1 Clarifier - Demolition Roof Plan
 - i. D2.2 Clarifier - Demolition Elevations & Masonry Repair
 - j. D3.1 High Service - Demolition Elevations
 - k. D4.1 Admin & South Filter Demolition Elevations & Masonry Repair
 - l. A1.1 North Filter - Roof Plan
 - m. A1.2 North Filter Elevations
 - n. A2.1 Clarifier Roof Plans
 - o. A2.2 Clarifier Elevations
 - p. A3.1 High Service Elevations
 - q. A4.1 Admin & South Filter Elevations
 - r. A5.1 Window Elevations & Schedule
 - s. A6.1 Roof Details

END OF DOCUMENT 000115

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 1000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Multiple Work Packages.
4. Work under Owner's separate contracts.
5. Work restrictions.
6. Specification and Drawing conventions.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: The City of Muskegon Water Filtration Plant.
- B. Owner: The City of Muskegon, 933 Terrace Street, Muskegon, Michigan 49440.
- C. Architect: Abonmarche Consultants, Inc., 95 W. Main Street, Benton Harbor, Michigan 49022.

1.5 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Single Prime Contract for the following:
 - a. Clarifier, North Filter and High Service Buildings: Masonry tuckpointing or replacement, stone panel repairs, replacement of lintels/support angles, and replacement of existing windows.
 - b. Clarifier & North Filter Building: Interior Structural Repairs
 - 2. And other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
- B. Type of Contract:
 - 1. Project will be constructed under coordinated, concurrent multiple contracts. See Section 01 1200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a list of multiple contracts, a description of work included under each of the multiple contracts, and the responsibilities of Project coordinator.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Restricted Use of Site: Each Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.7 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy Project site and existing building(s) during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.

1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Notify Owner not less than 72 hours in advance of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- B. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.
 2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
 3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
 4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.

- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 1000

SECTION 01 2300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
 - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

A. Alternate No.1:

1. Clarifier & North Filter Building: Remove & Replace Existing Roof.

B. Alternate No.2:

1. Clarifier, North Filter and South Filter Building: MEP Ventilation.

END OF SECTION 01 2300

SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests prior to award of Contract.
 - 2. Section 01 2300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 3. Section 01 6000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form [provided in Project Manual] [that is part of web-based Project management software] [acceptable to Architect].
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:

- a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from [ICC-ES] <Insert applicable code organization>.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice of Award. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.

SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

- b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- d. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided for compliance with LEED requirements.
- e. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided for compliance with IgCC requirements.
- f. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided for compliance with ASHRAE 189.1 requirements.
- g. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided for compliance with Green Globes requirements.
- h. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- i. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- j. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- k. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- l. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- m. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- n. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 2500

SECTION 01 2900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 1. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
 - 2. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
 - 3. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
 - 4. Subschedules for Separate Design Contracts: Where the Owner has retained design professionals under separate contracts who will each provide certification of payment requests, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with the scope of each design services contract, as described in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.

- b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Project number.
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Architect's Project number.
 - f. Contractor's name and address.
 - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
 7. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each Purchase contract. Show line-item value of Purchase contract. Indicate Owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
 8. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
 9. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.

PAYMENT PROCEDURES

10. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
11. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
12. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- C. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- D. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.

PAYMENT PROCEDURES

- b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- E. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- F. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
 - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."
 - 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- G. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
 - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 - 2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
 - 3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 - 4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 - 5. AIA Document G706.
 - 6. AIA Document G706A.
 - 7. AIA Document G707.
 - 8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 - 9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 - 10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
 - 11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
 - 12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 2900

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 3200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.
 - 2. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
 - 2. PDF file.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
 - 1. Submittal of cost-loaded startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- E. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS
DOCUMENTATION

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values,[list of subcontracts,] submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice of Award to date of Final Completion.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion
 - 1. .
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- D. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- E. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.

1.6 REPORTS

- A. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
 - 1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3200

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
 - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
 - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
 - 4. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
 3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
1. Project name.
 2. Date.
 3. Name of Architect.
 4. Name of Construction Manager.
 5. Name of Contractor.
 6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
 9. Category and type of submittal.
 10. Submittal purpose and description.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
 12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 13. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 15. Other necessary identification.
 16. Remarks.
 17. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals Utilizing Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files or other format indicated by Project management software.

1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
 2. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
 5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
 - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's[and Construction Manager's] action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's[and Construction Manager's] action stamp.

1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data[unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted].
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.

1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Project name and submittal number.
 - b. Generic description of Sample.
 - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - d. Sample source.
 - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
4. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
5. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
6. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
7. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.

- 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 3. Number and name of room or space.
 4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
 1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
 2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
 3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
 4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
2. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required.
 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action
 2. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.

- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3300

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 4000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. References and standards.
- B. Control of installation.
- C. Tolerances.
- D. Defect Assessment.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements: Requirements for material and product quality.

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. None.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Design Data: Submit for Architect's knowledge and action as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents, or for Owner's information.
 - 1. Include required product data and shop drawings.
- C. Certificates: When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by the manufacturer and Contractor or installation/application subcontractor to Architect, in quantities specified for Product Data.
 - 1. Indicate material or product conforms to or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
 - 2. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or product, but must be acceptable to Architect.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, for the Owner's information. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.

1.05 REFERENCES AND STANDARDS

- A. For products and workmanship specified by reference to a document or documents not included in the Project Manual, also referred to as reference standards, comply with requirements of the standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Conform to reference standard of date of issue current on date of Contract Documents, except where a specific date is established by applicable code.
- C. Obtain copies of standards where required by product specification sections.
- D. Maintain copy at project site during submittals, planning, and progress of the specific work, until Substantial Completion.
- E. Should specified reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- F. Neither the contractual relationships, duties, or responsibilities of the parties in Contract nor those of Architect shall be altered from the Contract Documents by mention or inference otherwise in any reference document.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT

USED PART 3 EXECUTION

301 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

302 TOLERANCES

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

303 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace work or portions of the work not conforming to specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Architect, it is not practical to remove and replace the work, Architect will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 43 33.75

ROOFING MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the Conditions of the Contract and Division 07 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Manufacturer's field services for roofing assemblies.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 07 05 00 – Common Work Results for Thermal and Moisture Protection.
- C. Related Work Specified Elsewhere:
 - 1. Roofing Material: Section 07 52 00- Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing.
 - 2. Roofing Material: Section 07 51 13 – Built-Up Asphalt Roofing – Hot-Applied
 - 3. Roofing Material: Section 07 51 14 – Built-Up Asphalt Roofing – Cold-Applied

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. International building Code (current edition) or local authority building code.
- B. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE): ASCE 7, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- C. Factory Mutual Global (FMG): Roof Assembly Classifications.
- D. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA): Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
- E. American National Standards Institute and Single Ply Roofing Institute (ANSI/SPRI): ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Testing and Certification Listing of Shop Fabricated Edge Metal.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's technical product data for each type of roofing product specified. Include data substantiating that materials comply with specified requirements.
- B. Specimen Warranty: Provide an unexecuted copy of the warranty specified for this Project, identifying the terms and conditions required of the Manufacturer and the Owner.
- C. Roofing System Manufacturer's Evaluation: Provide a comprehensive written assessment comparing available roofing solutions with validation of why the roofing system selection for the specific project is suitable and appropriate.

- D. Roofing System Manufacturer's Report Form: Provide a copy of the report form utilized by the roofing system manufacturer for progress inspections to monitor installation and quality.
- E. Online Reporting Capabilities: Provide a sample of the roofing system manufacturer's online roof inspection report as well as information about how long inspection reports are available to owner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Submit installation instructions and recommendations indicating special precautions required for installing the membrane.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that roof system furnished is approved by Factory Mutual Global, Underwriters Laboratories, Warnock Hersey or approved third party testing facility in accordance with ASTM E108, Class [A or B or C] for external fire and meets local or nationally recognized building codes.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that materials are manufactured in the United States and conform to requirements specified herein, are chemically and physically compatible with each other, and are suitable for inclusion within the total roof system specified herein.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Submit a certified copy of the roofing manufacturer's ISO 9001 compliance certificate.
- E. Written certification from the roofing system manufacturer certifying the applicator is currently authorized for the installation of the specified roof system.
- F. Design Loads: Submit copy of manufacturer's minimum design load calculations according to ASCE 7, Method 2 for Components and Cladding. In no case shall the design loads be taken to be less than those detailed in Design and Performance Criteria article of this specification.
- G. Qualification data for firms and individuals identified in Quality Assurance Article below.
- H. Test Reports: Submit ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Testing and Certification Listing of Shop Fabricated Edge Metal Products.
- I. Substitutions: Products proposed as equal to the products specified for this project shall meet all of the requirements in the appropriate Division 7 specifications and shall be submitted for consideration at least 7 days prior to the date that bids must be submitted.
 - 1. Proposals shall be accompanied by a copy of the manufacturer's standard specification Section. That specification Section shall be signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state in which the installation is to take place. Substitution requests containing specifications without licensed engineer certification shall be rejected for non-conformance.
 - 2. Manufacturer's checklist will be accompanied with any substitution to verify equal performance characteristics to those specified in Division 7 specification.
 - 3. The Owner's decision regarding substitutions will be considered final.

1.6 CONTRACT CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Warranty: Provide specified warranty for the Project, executed by the authorized agent of the Manufacturer.
- B. Roofing Maintenance Instructions: Provide a roof care and maintenance manual of manufacturer's recommendations for maintenance of installed roofing systems.
- C. Insurance Certification: Assist Owner in preparation and submittal of roof installation acceptance certification as may be necessary in connection with fire and extended coverage insurance on roofing and associated work.
- D. Inspection Logs: Copy of inspection reports as performed by the manufacturer shall be submitted at project closeout and include photographic documentation of installation progress, weather conditions, and personnel on the project at the time of every inspection.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this Section with not less than [12] years documented experience [and have ISO 9001 certification].
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in specified roofing installation with not less than [5] years experience and authorized by roofing system manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's roofing materials.
- C. Installer's Field Supervision: Maintain a full-time Supervisor/Foreman on job site during all phases of roofing work while roofing work is in progress. Maintain proper supervision of workmen.
- D. Maintain a copy of the roof plans, details, and specifications in the possession of the Supervisor/Foreman and on the roof at all times.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain all primary components of roof system from a single manufacturer. Secondary products that are required shall be recommended and approved in writing by the roofing system Manufacturer.
 - 1. The manufacturer providing the roofing system warranty must verify that they manufacture a minimum of 75% of the products utilized in the roofing system of this project. Products that are private labeled shall not be considered as manufactured by the roofing system supplier.
 - 2. Upon request of the Architect or Owner, submit Manufacturer's written approval of secondary components in list form, signed by an authorized agent of the Manufacturer.
- F. Source Quality Control: Manufacturer shall have in place a documented, standardized quality control program such as ISO-9001.

1.8 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Pre-Installation Roofing Conference: Convene a pre-roofing conference approximately two (2) weeks before scheduled commencement of roofing system installation and associated work.
- B. Require attendance of installer of each component of associated work: installers of deck or substrate construction to receive roofing work: installers of rooftop units and other work in and around roofing that must precede or follow roofing work (including

mechanical work if any): architect and/or engineer: owner: roofing system manufacturer's full time employee: and other representatives directly concerned with performance of the Work, including (where applicable) owner's insurers, testing agencies and governing authorities. Objectives of conference include:

1. Review foreseeable methods and procedures related to roofing work, including set up and mobilization areas for stored material and work area.
 2. Tour representative areas of roofing substrates (decks), inspect and discuss condition of substrate, roof drains, curbs, penetrations and other preparatory work performed by others.
 3. Review structural loading limitations of deck and inspect deck for loss of flatness and for required attachment.
 4. Review roofing system requirements (drawings, specifications and other contract documents).
 5. Review required submittals both completed and yet to be completed.
 6. Review and finalize construction schedule related to roofing work and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 7. Review required inspection, testing, certifying and material usage accounting procedures.
 8. Review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures for coping with unfavorable conditions, including possibility of temporary roofing (if not a mandatory requirement).
 9. Record discussion of conference including decisions and agreements (or disagreements) reached and furnish a copy of record to each party attending. If substantial disagreements exist at conclusion of conference, determine how disagreements will be resolved and set date for reconvening conference.
- C. The Owner's Representative will designate one of the conference participants to record the proceedings and promptly distribute them to the participants for record.
- D. The intent of the conference is to resolve issues affecting the installation and performance of roofing work. Do not proceed with roofing work until such issues are resolved to the satisfaction of the owner and [architect and/or engineer] of record. This shall not be construed as interference with the progress of Work on the part of the owner or [architect or engineer] of Record.

1.9 MANUFACTURER'S INSPECTIONS

- A. When the Project is in progress, a full-time employee of the roofing system manufacturer must provide the following:
1. Report progress and quality of the work as observed. Progress reports must be published to an online system as referenced in Section 1.4.
 2. Provide periodic (5 days per week) roofing installation inspections: Inspections must include; photographic documentation of work in-progress and written statements of compliance with details/shop drawings.
 3. Report to the owner, architect and/or engineer in writing any failure or refusal of the contractor to correct unacceptable practices called to the contractor's attention.
 4. Confirm after project completion that the manufacturer has observed no application procedures in conflict with the specifications other than those that may have been previously reported and corrected.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Upon completion of installation, and acceptance by the owner and architect and/or engineer, the manufacturer will supply to the owner the specified warranty.
- B. Installer will submit a two (2)- year workmanship warranty to the membrane manufacturer with a copy directly to the owner.
- C. The roofing system manufacturer must have been in continuous business operation for a period of time at least as long as the length of the roof system warranty provided for this project.

1.11 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Uniform Wind Uplift Load Capacity (required for each roof section)
 - 1. Installed roof system shall withstand negative (uplift) design wind loading pressures complying with the following criteria.
Attachment shall be installed exactly as given in Part 3.
 - a. Design Code: ASCE 7-05, Method 2 for Components and Cladding.
 - b. Category [IV] Building with an Importance Factor of [1]
 - c. Wind Speed: [120] mph
 - d. Exposure Category: [D]
 - e. Design Roof Height: [20] feet.
 - f. Minimum Building Width: [90] feet.
 - g. Roof Pitch: [1/8] inches per foot.
 - h. Topographic Factor: [1]
 - 1) Roof Area Design Uplift Pressure:
 - 2) Zone 1 – Field of roof [24] psf
 - 3) Zone 2 – Eaves, ridges, hips and rakes [40.3] psf
 - 4) Zone 3 – Corners [60.7] psi
- B. Live Load: 20 psf, or not to exceed original building design.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements of related Division 07 Section.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cooperate with manufacturer, inspection and test agencies engaged or required to perform services in connection with installing the roof system.
- B. Insurance/Code Compliance: Where required by code, install and test the roofing system to comply with governing regulation and specified insurance requirements.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Roofing Manufacturer Representative shall perform field inspection as specified in Article titled: MANUFACTURER'S INSPECTIONS above. Inspections must include photographic documentation of installation progress, weather conditions, and personnel on the project at the time of inspection.

- B. Correct defects or irregularities discovered during field inspection. Issues deemed defective must be re-inspected and determined suitable by the roofing manufacturer.
- C. Require attendance of roofing materials manufacturers' representatives at site during installation of the roofing system. A copy of the specification shall also be on site at all times.
- D. Frequent progress meetings shall be conducted during the performance of roof system installation and must be attended by the owner, architect or engineer, roofing system manufacturer's full-time employee, and other representatives directly concerned with performance of the work.

3.4 FINAL INSPECTION

- A. At the completion of the roofing installation and associated work, meet with contractor, architect or engineer, installer, installer of associated work, owner, roofing system manufacturer's representative, and other representatives directly concerned with performance of roofing system.
- B. Walk roof surface areas of the building, inspect perimeter building edges as well as flashing of roof penetrations, walls, curbs and other equipment. List all items requiring correction or completion and furnish copy of list to each party in attendance.
- C. Notify the [contractor] [architect and/or engineer] [owner] upon completion of corrections.
- D. The roofing system manufacturer reserves the right to request a thermographic scan of the roof during final inspection to determine if any damp or wet materials have been installed. The thermographic scan shall be provided by the roofing contractor.
- E. If core cuts verify the presence of damp or wet materials, the roofing contractor shall be required to replace the damaged areas at his own expense.
- F. Following the final inspection, provide written notice of acceptance of the installation from the roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Immediately correct roof leakage during construction. If the contractor does not respond within twenty-four (24) hours, the owner may exercise right to correct the Work under the terms of the Conditions of the Contract.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 5000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND
CONTROLS

- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND
CONTROLS

- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's existing or new toilet facilities is not permitted.
- D. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed.
 - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
 - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area, using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
 - 2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
 - 3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
- E. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- F. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 - 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- B. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

- C. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- D. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
 - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 - 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- E. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 - 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 7300 "Execution."
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
 - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.

- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to [erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings] [requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent].
 - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
 - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 5639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- F. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- G. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND
CONTROLS

- J. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
 - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner from fumes and noise.
 - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
 - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
 - 2. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
 - 3. Protect air-handling equipment.
 - 4. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- M. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND
CONTROLS

3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.

2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 5000

SECTION 01 6000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
 - 2. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 3. Section 01 2300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 4. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 5. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
 - 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
 - 1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:

- a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
 - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
 - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
 - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
 - b. Model and serial number.
 - c. Capacity.
 - d. Speed.
 - e. Ratings.
 - 3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
 - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.

3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect[through Construction Manager] in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
 2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."

3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
 - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
 - 1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
 - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 - 5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
 - 1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
 - 2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 6000

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 7300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner's portion of the Work.
 - 6. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 7. Progress cleaning.
 - 8. Starting and adjusting.
 - 9. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for coordination of , Owner's separate contracts, and limits on use of Project site.
 - 2. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
 - 4. Section 02 4119 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: Refer to Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."
- C. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
 - 2. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.
- B. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect ."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
 - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
 - 1. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- E. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.

2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- F. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

EXECUTION

- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.7 PROTECTION AND REPAIR OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- D. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 7300

SECTION 01 7419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 2. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 04 4313.13 "Anchored Stone Masonry Veneer" for disposal requirements for excess stone and stone waste.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Achieve end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 percent by weight of total nonhazardous solid waste generated by the Work. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:
 - 1. Demolition Waste:
 - a. Brick.
 - b. Concrete masonry units.
 - c. Wood studs.
 - d. Plywood and oriented strand board.

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT
AND DISPOSAL

- e. Wood trim.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Doors and frames.
- i. Door hardware.
- j. Windows.
- k. Glazing.
- l. Equipment.
- m. Piping.
- n. Supports and hangers.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
 - 1) Paper.
 - 2) Cardboard.
 - 3) Boxes.
 - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
 - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
 - 6) Wood crates.
 - 7) Wood pallets.
 - 8) Plastic pails.
- i. Construction Office Waste: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following construction office waste materials:
 - 1) Paper.
 - 2) Aluminum cans.
 - 3) Glass containers.

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT
AND DISPOSAL

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials and legally dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- D. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.

END OF SECTION 01 7419

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."
6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
9. Complete final cleaning requirements.

10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures."
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
 5. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

1. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
2. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
3. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.

- g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 - i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 01 7300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 01 7700

SECTION 01 7839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 1200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for coordinating Project Record Documents covering the Work of multiple contracts.
 - 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for final property survey.
 - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set(s) of file prints.
 - 3) Submit Record Digital Data Files and one set(s) of plots.
 - 4) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.

- 2) Submit Record Digital Data Files and three set(s) of Record Digital Data File plots.
 - 3) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated into Project Record Documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
- 1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as for the original Contract Drawings.

1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.

1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 7839

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 02 4119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
 - 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
 - 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 4119

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 03 3000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
 - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F, other than reinforcing steel.
 - 5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, , .
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.

C. Color Pigment: ASTM C979/C979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments, color stable,[free of carbon black,] nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. Bon Tool Co.
 - b. Butterfield Color, Inc.
 - c. Matcrete Inc.
 - d. NewLook International, Inc.
 - e. Proline Concrete Tools, Inc.
 - f. Solomon Colors, Inc.

D. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable [or] [complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M, including all limits listed in Table 2 and the requirements of paragraph 5.4]

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

2.3 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 - 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
 - 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
 - 3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
 - 4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
 - 5. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 - 2. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
- D. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

EXECUTION

2.4 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
 - 1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
 - 2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2.5 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:

1. Daily access to the Work.
2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

2.6 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

2.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
 - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
 - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
 - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
 - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

2.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
 - a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches wide or 1/2 inch deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch.
 - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class D.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

2.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Trowel Finish:
 - 1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
 - 2. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
 - 3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
 - 5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
 - 6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view.

2.10 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In:
 - 1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
 - 3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

2.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

2.12 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least **[one]** **[six]** month(s).
 - 2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

2.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
 - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
 - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.
 - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch.
 - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
 - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
 - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
 - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
 - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:

1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
 - a. Correct low and high areas.
 - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
 - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
 - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
 - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
 - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
 - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
 - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
 - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.

- a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
 - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
 - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

2.14 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Protect from petroleum stains.
 - 2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
 - 3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
 - 4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
 - 5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
 - 6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
 - 7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
 - 8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 03 3000

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 04 0120.63 - BRICK MASONRY REPAIR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Repairing brick masonry.
 - 2. Removing abandoned anchors.
 - 3. Painting steel uncovered during the work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.
- C. Saturation Coefficient: Ratio of the weight of water absorbed during immersion in cold water to weight absorbed during immersion in boiling water; used as an indication of resistance of bricks to freezing and thawing.

1.4 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for colored mortar immediately after approval of Samples. Take delivery of and store at Project site enough quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform brick masonry repair work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 - 3. Remove paint.
 - 4. Clean masonry: new veneer and surfaces tuck pointed.
 - 5. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding masonry to be replaced and from joints adjacent to masonry repairs along joints.

6. Repair masonry, including replacing existing masonry with new masonry materials where shown on plans.
 7. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 8. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 9. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
 10. Where water repellents are to be used on or near masonry work, delay application of these chemicals until after pointing and cleaning.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in bricks according to "Brick Masonry Patching" Article. Patch holes in mortar joints according to Section 04 0120.64 "Brick Masonry Repointing."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Show provisions for expansion joints or other sealant joints.
 2. Show provisions for flashing and weep holes as required.
 3. Show locations of scaffolding and points of scaffolding in contact with masonry. Include details of each point of contact or anchorage.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
1. Colored Mortar: Submit sets of mortar that will be left exposed in the form of sample mortar strips, **6 inches** long by **1/4 inch** wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and source of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
 2. Sand Types Used for Mortar: Minimum **8 oz.** of each in plastic screw-top jars.
 3. Patching Compound: Submit sets of patching compound Samples in the form of plugs (patches in drilled holes) in sample units of masonry representative of the range of masonry colors on the building.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of patching compound that matches the variations in existing masonry when cured and dry.

4. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Each type of brick unit to be used for replacing existing units. Include sets of Samples to show the full range of shape, color, and texture to be expected. For each brick type, provide straps or panels containing at least four bricks. Include multiple straps for brick with a wide range.
 2. Each type of patching compound in the form of briquettes, at least 3 inches long by 1-1/2 inches wide. Document each Sample with manufacturer and stock number or other information necessary to order additional material.
 3. Accessories: Each type of accessory and miscellaneous support.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repair Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repair firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repair work.
1. Field Supervision: Brick masonry repair specialist firm shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that brick masonry repair work is in progress.
- B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repair to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution and for fabrication and installation.
1. Masonry Repair: Prepare sample areas for each type of masonry repair work performed. If not otherwise indicated, size each mockup not smaller than two adjacent whole units or approximately 48 inches in least dimension. Construct sample areas in locations in existing walls where directed by Architect unless otherwise indicated. Demonstrate quality of materials, workmanship, and blending with existing work. Include the following as a minimum:
 - a. Replacement: Four brick units replaced.
 - b. Patching: Three small holes as directed for each type of brick indicated to be patched.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver bricks to Project site strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy-duty cartons and protected against impact and chipping.
- B. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- E. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- F. Handle bricks to prevent overstressing, chipping, defacement, and other damage.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit brick masonry repair work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits: Repair brick masonry only when air temperature is between **40 and 90 deg F** and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect masonry repairs when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and repair materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of **90 deg F** and above unless otherwise indicated.
- D. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repairing brick masonry (brick, cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Face Brick: As required to complete brick masonry repair work.
 - 1. Brick Matching Existing: Units with colors, color variation within units, surface texture, size, and shape that match existing brickwork and with physical properties
 - a. For existing brickwork that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide brick that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than brick that matches an individual color within that range.
 - 2. Special Shapes:
 - a. Provide molded, 100 percent solid shapes for applications where core holes or "frogs" could be exposed to view or weather when in final position and where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
 - 3. Tolerances as Fabricated: According to tolerance requirements in ASTM C 216, Type FBX According to tolerance requirements in ASTM C 216, Type FBS Insert requirement.
- B. Building Brick: ASTM C 62, of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.
 - 1. Grade SW where in contact with earth.

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II,; white or gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type N.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
 - b. Essroc.
 - c. Hanson Brick and Tile; Lehigh Hanson.
 - d. Holcim (US) Inc.
 - e. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - f. QUIKRETE.

- g. Belden Brick
- h. Consumers Concrete.

D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - b. Consumers Concrete.

E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.

- 1. Exposed Mortar: Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
- 2. Colored Mortar: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C 979/C 979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Davis Colors.
 - b. LANXEES Corporation.
 - c. Solomon Colors, Inc.
 - d. Consumers Concrete.

G. Water: Potable.

- a. Cathedral Stone Products, Inc.
- b. Edison Coatings, Inc.

H. Mortar Type N required

I. 1 Part Portland Cement, 1 Part Hydrated Lime and 6 Part Sand.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Setting Buttons and Shims: Resilient plastic, nonstaining to masonry, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of bricks, less the required depth of pointing materials unless removed before pointing.
- B. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.

- C. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:

1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
3. Consistency of each application.
4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

2.5 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent, unless otherwise demonstrated by a satisfactory history of performance.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces.
1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and repair work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.

3.2 ABANDONED ANCHOR REMOVAL

- A. Remove abandoned anchors, brackets, wood nailers, and other extraneous items no longer in use unless indicated to remain.
1. Remove items carefully to avoid spalling or cracking masonry.
 2. Notify Architect before proceeding if an item cannot be removed without damaging surrounding masonry. Do the following where directed:

- a. Cut or grind off item approximately **3/4 inch** beneath surface and core drill a recess of same depth in surrounding masonry as close around item as practical.
 - b. Immediately paint exposed end of item with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness per coat. Keep paint off sides of recess.
3. Patch hole where each item was removed unless directed to remove and replace bricks.

3.3 BRICK REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. At locations indicated, remove bricks that are damaged, spalled, or deteriorated or are to be reused. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
 1. When removing single bricks, remove material from center of brick and work toward outside edges.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition. Coordinate with new flashing, reinforcement, and lintels, which are specified in other Sections.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
 1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
 3. Store brick for reuse. Store off ground, on skids, and protected from weather.
 4. Deliver cleaned brick not required for reuse to Owner unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- G. Replace removed damaged brick with other removed brick in good condition, where possible, or with new brick matching existing brick. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.

- H. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
 - 1. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
 - 2. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
- I. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with enough mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than **30 g/30 sq. in. per min.** Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
 - 1. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.
 - 2. Rake out mortar used for laying brick before mortar sets according to Section 04 0120.64 "Brick Masonry Repointing." Point at same time as repointing of surrounding area.
 - 3. When mortar is hard enough to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- J. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 - 1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.4 PAINTING STEEL UNCOVERED DURING THE WORK

- A. Notify Architect if steel is exposed during masonry removal. Where Architect determines that steel is structural, or for other reasons cannot be totally removed, prepare and paint it as follows:
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Remove paint, rust, and other contaminants according to or Insert surface preparation standard, as applicable to comply with paint manufacturer's recommended preparation.
 - 2. Antirust Coating: Immediately paint exposed steel with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended rate of application (dry film thickness per coat).
- B. If on inspection and rust removal, the thickness of a steel member is found to be reduced from rust by more than **1/16 inch**, notify Architect before proceeding.

3.5 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.6 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property.
- B. Masonry Waste: Remove masonry waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 0120.63

SECTION 04 0120.64 - BRICK MASONRY REPOINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Repointing joints with mortar.
 - 2. Repointing joints with sealant.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.

1.4 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for pointing mortar immediately after approval of Samples. Take delivery of and store at Project site enough quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform brick masonry repointing work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 - 3. Remove paint.
 - 4. Clean masonry.
 - 5. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding masonry to be replaced and from joints adjacent to masonry repairs along joints.
 - 6. Repair masonry, including replacing existing masonry with new masonry materials.
 - 7. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 - 8. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 - 9. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.

10. Where water repellents are to be used on or near masonry work, delay application of these chemicals until after pointing and cleaning.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in bricks according to Section 04 0120.63 "Brick Masonry Repair." Patch holes in mortar joints according to "Repointing" Article.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 1. Pointing Mortar: Submit sets of mortar for pointing in the form of sample mortar strips, **6 inches** long by **1/4 inch** wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and source of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
 2. Sand Type Used for Pointing Mortar: Minimum **8 oz.** of each in plastic screw-top jars.
 3. Sealant materials.
 4. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following:
 1. Each type, color, and texture of pointing mortar in the form of sample mortar strips, **6 inches** long by **1/4 inch** wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Include with each Sample a list of ingredients with proportions of each. Identify sources, both supplier and quarry, of each type of sand and brand names of cementitious materials and pigments if any.
 2. Sealant materials.
 3. Accessories: Each type of accessory and miscellaneous support.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For brick masonry repointing specialist.
- B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For existing bricks and mortar.

- C. Quality-control program.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repointing Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repointing firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repointing work.
 - 1. Field Supervision: Brick masonry repointing specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that brick masonry repointing work is in progress.
- B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repointing to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Repointing: Rake out joints in two separate areas indicated for each type of repointing required, and repoint one of the areas.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repointing work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.

- B. Temperature Limits: Repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between **40 and 90 deg F** and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with the following procedures for mortar-joint pointing unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. When air temperature is below **40 deg F**, heat mortar ingredients and existing masonry walls to produce temperatures between **40 and 120 deg F**.
 - 2. When mean daily air temperature is below **40 deg F**, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above **32 deg F** within the enclosure for seven days after pointing.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect mortar-joint pointing when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of **90 deg F** and above unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repointing brick masonry (cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; white or gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type N.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
 - b. Essroc.
 - c. Hanson Brick and Tile; Lehigh Hanson.
 - d. Holcim (US) Inc.

- e. [Lafarge North America Inc.](#)
 - f. [QUIKRETE.](#)
 - g. Consumers Concrete.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
- 1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Lafarge North America Inc.](#)
 - b. Consumers Concrete.
- E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.
- 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 - 2. Color: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C 979/C 979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
- 1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Davis Colors.](#)
 - b. [LANXESS Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Solomon Colors, Inc.](#)
 - d. Consumers Concrete.
- G. Water: Potable.
- H. Mortar Type N required
- I. 1 Part Portland Cement, 1 Part Hydrated Lime and 6 Part Sand.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Sealant Materials:
- 1. Sealant manufacturer's standard elastomeric sealant(s) of base polymer and characteristics indicated below and according to applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
 - a. Type: Single-component, nonsag urethane sealant Insert type.
 - 2. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of mortar adjoining installed sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Joint-Sealant Backing:

1. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
 2. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible, joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.
- D. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
 3. Consistency of each application.
 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
 5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that retains its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces.

1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
2. Keep wall area wet below pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.

3.2 MASONRY REPOINTING, GENERAL

- A. Appearance Standard: Repointed surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from **20 feet** away by Architect.

3.3 REPOINTING

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
 1. All joints in areas indicated.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of 2 times joint width. Do not remove unsound mortar more than **2 inches** deep; consult Architect for direction.
 2. Remove mortar from brick and other masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
 3. Do not spall edges of brick or other masonry units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged brick or other masonry units as directed by Architect.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than **3/8 inch** until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch**. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing masonry units have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.

4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 6. Hairline cracking within mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water applied by low-pressure spray.
1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections. Allow inspectors use of lift devices and scaffolding, as needed, to perform inspections.
- B. Architect's Project Representatives: Architect will assign Project representatives to help carry out Architect's responsibilities at the site, including observing progress and quality of portion of the Work completed. Allow Architect's Project representatives use of lift devices and scaffolding, as needed, to observe progress and quality of portion of the Work completed.
- C. Notify Architect's Project representatives in advance of times when lift devices and scaffolding will be relocated. Do not relocate lift devices and scaffolding until Architect's Project representatives have had reasonable opportunity to make inspections and observations of work areas at lift device or scaffold location.

END OF SECTION 04 0120.64

SECTION 04 0140.61 - STONE REPAIR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Repairing stone masonry.
 - a. Cracked Stone Panels
 - b. Chipped Stone Panels

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.
- C. Rift: The most pronounced direction of splitting or cleavage of a stone.
- D. Stone Terminology: ASTM C 119.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to stone repair including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify stone repair specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Coordination with building occupants.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Work Sequence: Perform stone repair work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
1. Remove plant growth.
 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 3. Remove paint.
 4. Clean stone.
 5. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding stone to be replaced and from joints adjacent to stone repairs along joints.
 6. Repair stonework, including replacing existing stone with new stone.
 7. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 8. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 9. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
 10. Where water repellents are to be used on or near stonework, delay application of these chemicals until after pointing and cleaning.
- B. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in stone according to "Stone Patching" Article. Patch holes in mortar joints according to Section 04 0140.62 "Stone Repointing."

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
1. Patching Compound: Submit sets of patching compound Samples in the form of plugs (patches in drilled holes) in sample units of stone representative of the range of stone colors on the building.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least [three] [six] <Insert number> Samples of different mixes of patching compound that matches the variations in existing stone when cured and dry.
 2. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Each type of replacement stone. Include sets of Samples to show full range of color, texture, grain, veining, and finish to be expected. Provide sets of at least [two] [three] <Insert number> 12-by-12-inch Samples for each type, but no fewer than necessary to indicate full range and proportion of variations within range.
2. Each type of patching compound in form of briquettes, at least 3 inches long by 1-1/2 inches wide. Document each Sample with manufacturer and stock number or other information necessary to order additional material.
3. Each type of adhesive.
4. Accessories: Each type of anchor, accessory, and miscellaneous support.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Stone Repair Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced stone repair firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing standard unit masonry or new stone masonry is insufficient experience for stone repair work.

1. Field Supervision: Stone repair specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that stone repair work is in progress.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver stone units to Project site strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy-duty crates and protected against impact and chipping.
- B. Deliver each piece of stone with code mark or setting number on unexposed face, corresponding to Shop Drawings, using nonstaining paint.
- C. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- D. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- E. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- F. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- G. Handle stone to prevent overstressing, chipping, defacement, and other damage.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit stone repair work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits, General: Repair stone units only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with the following procedures for stone repair unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. When air temperature is below 40 deg F, heat mortar ingredients, repair materials, and existing stone to produce temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F.
 - 2. When mean daily air temperature is below 40 deg F, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F within the enclosure for seven days after repair.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect stone repairs when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F and above unless otherwise indicated.
- E. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repairing stone (stone, cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 STONE MATERIALS

- A. Stone Matching Existing: Natural building stone of variety, color, texture, grain, veining, finish, size, and shape that match existing stone and with physical properties within 10 percent of those determined from preconstruction testing of selected existing stone. as listed below:
 - 1. Physical Properties for :

2. For existing stone that exhibits a range of colors, texture, grain, veining, finishes, sizes, or shapes, provide stone that proportionally matches that range rather than stone that matches an individual color, texture, grain, veining, finish, size, or shape within that range.
3. Quarry: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide stone from .
 - a. Original Quarry: .

2.3 MANUFACTURED REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Stone Patching Compound: Factory-mixed restoration mortar product that is custom manufactured for patching stone.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cathedral Stone Products, Inc, John M70 Restoration Mortar.
 - b. Approved Equal: Per Section 01 6000 Product Requirement.
 2. Use formulation that is vapor and water permeable (equal to or more than the stone), exhibits low shrinkage, has lower modulus of elasticity than stone units being repaired, and develops high bond strength to all types of stone.
 3. Use formulation having working qualities and retardation control to permit forming and sculpturing where necessary.
 4. Formulate patching compound in colors, textures, and grain to match stone being patched. Provide sufficient number of colors to enable matching of each piece of stone.
- B. Stone-to-Stone Adhesive (Fractured Stone): Two-part polyester or epoxy-resin stone adhesive with a 15- to 45-minute cure at 70 deg F, recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer for type of stone repair indicated, and matching stone color.
 1. Product recommended: Bonstone Clear Gel Epoxy
 2. Approved Equal: Per Section 01 2500 Substitution Procedures

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Stone Repair Anchors and Pins: Mechanical fasteners and pins of stainless steel; designed for stone stabilization and pinning stone pieces; matching shape and size of existing anchors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.

- C. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer according to MPI #23 (surface-tolerant, anticorrosive metal primer) or SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 zinc-rich coating Insert requirement.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Use coating requiring no better than SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" or SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" Insert surface preparation standard surface preparation according to manufacturer's literature or certified statement.
 - 2. VOC Limit: Use coating with a VOC content of 400 g/L Insert value or less.
- D. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
 - 1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
 - 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Consistency of each application.
 - 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
 - 5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding stone and other surfaces.
 - 1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 - 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and repair work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 - 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed stone and other surfaces.

3.2 STONE REPAIR, GENERAL

- A. Appearance Standard: Repaired surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 20 feet away by Architect.

3.3 PAINTING STEEL UNCOVERED DURING THE WORK

- A. Notify Architect if steel is exposed during stone removal. Where Architect determines that steel is structural, or for other reasons cannot be totally removed, prepare and paint it as follows:

1. Surface Preparation: Remove paint, rust, and other contaminants according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" or SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" Insert surface preparation standard, as applicable to comply with paint manufacturer's recommended preparation.
 2. Antirust Coating: Immediately paint exposed steel with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended rate of application (dry film thickness per coat).
- B. If on inspection and rust removal, the thickness of a steel member is found to be reduced from rust by more than 1/16 inch, notify Architect before proceeding.

3.4 CRACK INJECTION

- A. General: Comply with cementitious crack-filler manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Drill 1/4-inch- diameter injection holes as follows:
1. Transverse Cracks Less Than 3/8 inch Wide: Drill holes through center of crack at 12 to 18 inches o.c.
 2. Transverse Cracks More Than 3/8 inch Wide: Drill holes through center of crack at 18 to 36 inches o.c.
 3. Delaminations: Drill holes at approximately 18 inches o.c. both vertically and horizontally.
 4. Drill holes 2 inches deep.
- C. Clean out drill holes and cracks with compressed air and water. Remove dirt and organic matter, loose material, sealants, and failed crack repair materials.
- D. Place plastic injection ports in drilled holes and seal face of cracks between injection ports with clay or other nonstaining, removable plugging material. Leave openings at upper ends of cracks for air release.
- E. Inject cementitious crack filler through ports sequentially, beginning at one end of area and working to opposite end; where possible, begin at lower end of injection area and work upward. Inject filler until it extrudes from adjacent ports. After port has been injected, plug with clay or other suitable material and begin injecting filler at adjacent port, repeating process until all ports have been injected.
- F. Clean cementitious crack filler from face of stone before it sets by scrubbing with water.
- G. After cementitious crack filler has set, remove injection ports, plugging material, and excess filler. Patch injection holes and surface of cracks as specified in "Stone Patching" Article.

3.5 STONE PATCHING

- A. Patch the following stone units unless another type of repair or replacement is indicated:
 - 1. Units indicated to be patched.
 - 2. Units with chipped edges or corners. Patch chipped edges or corners measuring more than 3/4 inch in least dimension.
 - 3. Units with small areas of deep deterioration. Patch deep deteriorations measuring more than 3/4 inch in least dimension and more than 1/4 inch deep.
- B. Remove and replace existing patches unless otherwise indicated or approved by Architect.
- C. Remove deteriorated material and remove adjacent material that has begun to deteriorate. Carefully remove additional material so patch does not have feathered edges but has square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and is at least 1/4 inch thick, but not less than recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer.
- D. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch extends to edge of stone unit.
- E. Apply restoration mortar per manufacturers recommendation
- F. Remove and replace patches with hairline cracks or that show separation from stone at edges, and those that do not match adjoining stone in color or texture.

3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed stone surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonstone surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.7 STONE WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess stone materials are Contractor's property.
- B. Stone Waste: Remove stone waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 0140.61

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 04 0140.62 - STONE REPOINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Repointing joints with mortar.
 - 2. Repointing joints with sealant.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 3516 "Alteration Project Procedures" for general remodeling, renovation, repair, and maintenance requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Rift: The most pronounced direction of splitting or cleavage of a stone.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to repointing stonework including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify stone repointing specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Coordination with building occupants.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Work Sequence: Perform stone repointing work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
1. Remove plant growth.
 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 3. Remove paint.
 4. Clean stone.
 5. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding stone to be replaced and from joints adjacent to stone repairs along joints.
 6. Repair stonework, including replacing existing stone with new stone.
 7. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 8. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 9. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
 10. Where water repellents are to be used on or near stonework, delay application of these chemicals until after pointing and cleaning.
- B. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in stone according to Section 04 0140.61 "Stone Repair." Patch holes in mortar joints according to "Repointing" Article.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Each type, color, and texture of pointing mortar in the form of sample mortar strips, 6 inches long by 1/2 inch wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Include with each Sample a list of ingredients with proportions of each. Identify sources, both supplier and quarry, of each type of sand and brand names of cementitious materials and pigments if any.
 2. Sealant materials.
 3. Accessories: Each type of anchor, accessory, and miscellaneous support.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Stone Repointing Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced stone repointing firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing standard unit masonry or new stone masonry is insufficient experience for stone repointing work.
 - 1. Field Supervision: Stone repointing specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that stone repointing work is in progress.
- B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of stone repointing to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Repointing: Rake out joints in two separate areas as indicated for each type of repointing required, and repoint one of the areas.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repointing work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.

- B. Temperature Limits: Repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with the following procedures for mortar-joint pointing unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. When air temperature is below 40 deg F, heat mortar ingredients and existing stone to produce temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F.
 - 2. When mean daily air temperature is below 40 deg F, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F within the enclosure for seven days after pointing.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect mortar-joint pointing when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F and above unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for stone repointing (cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; white or gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
 - b. Essroc.

- c. Hanson Brick and Tile; Lehigh Hanson.
- d. Holcim (US) Inc.
- e. Lafarge North America Inc.
- f. QUIKRETE.
- g. Consumers Concrete

D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - b. Consumers Concrete.

E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.

- 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
- 2. Color: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C 979/C 979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in stone mortars.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Davis Colors.
 - b. LANXESS Corporation.
 - c. Solomon Colors, Inc.
 - d. Consumers Concrete

G. Water: Potable.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Sealant Materials:

- 1. Sealant manufacturer's standard elastomeric sealant(s) of base polymer and characteristics indicated below and according to applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
 - a. Type: Single-component, nonsag urethane sealant Insert type.
- 2. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of mortar adjoining installed sealant unless otherwise indicated.

3. Ground-Mortar Aggregate: Custom crushed and ground pointing mortar sand or existing mortar retrieved from joints. Grind to a particle size that matches the adjacent mortar aggregate and color. Remove all fines passing the No. 100 Insert number sieve.
- B. Joint-Sealant Backing:
1. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
 2. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible, joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.
- D. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
 3. Consistency of each application.
 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
 5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that retains its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.

1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent, unless otherwise demonstrated by a satisfactory history of performance.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding stone and other surfaces.
1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 2. Keep wall area wet below pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed stone and other surfaces.
- B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to stone and store during stone repointing. Reinstall when repointing is complete.
1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

3.2 STONE REPOINTING, GENERAL

- A. Appearance Standard: Repointed surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 20 feet away by Architect.

3.3 REPOINTING

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
1. All joints in areas indicated.
- B. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of 2 times joint width. Do not remove unsound mortar more than 2 inches deep; consult Architect for direction.
 2. Remove mortar from stone surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose stone for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
 3. Do not spall edges of stone units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged stone units as directed by Architect.

- C. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose stone, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- D. Pointing with Mortar:
1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8 inch until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing stone has worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of stone to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed stone surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
 4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 6. Hairline cracking within mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
- E. Pointing with Sealant: Comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" and as follows:
1. After raking out, keep joints dry and free of mortar and debris.
 2. Clean and prepare joint surfaces. Prime joint surfaces unless sealant manufacturer recommends against priming. Do not allow primer to spill or migrate onto adjoining surfaces.
 3. Fill sealant joints with specified joint sealant.
 - a. Install cylindrical sealant backing beneath the sealant. Where space is insufficient for cylindrical sealant backing, install bond-breaker tape.
 - b. Install sealant using only proven installation techniques that ensure that sealant is deposited in a uniform, continuous ribbon, without gaps or air pockets, and with complete wetting of the joint bond surfaces equally on both sides. Fill joint flush with surrounding stonework and matching the contour of adjoining mortar joints.
 - c. Install sealant as recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer but within the following general limitations, measured at the center (thin) section of the bead:
 - 1) Fill joints to a depth equal to joint width, but not more than 1/2 inch deep or less than 1/4 inch deep.

- d. Tool sealant to form smooth, uniform beads, slightly concave. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joint.
 - e. Sanded Joints: Immediately after first tooling, apply ground-mortar aggregate to sealant, gently pushing aggregate into the surface of sealant. Lightly retool sealant to form smooth, uniform beads, slightly concave. Remove excess sealant and aggregate from surfaces adjacent to joint.
 - f. Do not allow sealant to overflow or spill onto adjoining surfaces, or to migrate into the voids of adjoining surfaces, particularly rough textures. Remove excess and spillage of sealant promptly as the work progresses. Clean adjoining surfaces by the means necessary to eliminate evidence of spillage, without damage to adjoining surfaces or finishes, as demonstrated in an approved mockup.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing stone, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed stone surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonstone surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 04 0140.62

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 04 2000 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Clay face brick.
 - 2. Building (common) brick.
 - 3. Glazed brick.
 - 4. Steel reinforcing bars.
 - 5. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
 - 6. Glazed Unit Masonry
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
 - 1. Cast-stone trim in unit masonry.
 - 2. Steel lintels in unit masonry.
 - 3. Steel shelf angles for supporting unit masonry.
 - 4. Cavity wall insulation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of **24 inches** down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
 - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of **24 inches** down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is **40 deg F** and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
 - 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C1314.

2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within **20 feet** vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:

- B. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.5 BRICK

- A. Indigenous Materials: Brick shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site. If materials are transported by rail or water, the distance transported by rail or water shall be multiplied by 0.25 to determine the distance to Project site.
- B. Regional Materials: Brick shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site. If materials are transported by rail or water, the distance transported by rail or water shall be multiplied by 0.25 to determine the distance to Project site.
- C. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
 - 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 - 2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
 - 3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
 - 4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- D. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C216.
 - 1. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-5/8 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long (Field Verify).
 - 2. Application: Use where brick is exposed unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Where shown to "match existing," provide face brick matching color range, texture, and size of existing adjacent brickwork.
- E. Building (Common) Brick: ASTM C62, .
 - 1. Size: Match size of face brick.
 - 2. Brick Types
 - a. Brick Texture (Administration and South Filter Building), exterior match existing

- b. Vertical texture (Clarifier and North Filter Buildings exterior match existing)
- F. Glazed Brick (South Filter Building, Interior): Facing brick complying with ASTM C216, with glaze complying with ASTM C126;.
 - 1. Size (Actual Dimensions): **3-5/8 inches** wide by **2-5/8 inches** high by **7-5/8 inches** long (Field Verify).
 - 2. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.
 - 3. Application: Use where brick is exposed unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Where shown to "match existing," provide glazed brick matching color range, texture, and size of existing adjacent brickwork.
- G. Glazed Unit Masonry (North Filter Building, Interior): Facing brick complying with ASTM C216, with glaze complying with ASTM C126;.
 - 1. Speutra Glaze, Ft. Worth, Texas
 - 2. Size (Actual Dimensions): **3-3/4 inches** wide by **15-3/4 inches** high by **7-5/8 inches** long Shape 45, Match Existing Color. (Field Verify).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.

- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds **30 g/30 sq. in.** per minute when tested according to ASTM C67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus **1/2 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
 - 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
 - 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch** in a story height or **1/2 inch** total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
 - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
 - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
 - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
 - 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
 - 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
 - 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet** or **1/2-inch** maximum.

7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs. Match existing coursing.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
- E. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 07 8443 "Joint Firestopping".

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay as follows:
 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
 1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
 2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
 3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
 4. Rake out mortar joints for pointing with sealant.
- D. Rake out mortar joints at glazed brick to a uniform depth of **1/4 inch** and point with epoxy mortar to comply with epoxy-mortar manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer **3/4 inch** or more in width.
- F. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 COMPOSITE MASONRY

- A. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:
 1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for [**4.5 sq. ft.**] [**2.67 sq. ft.**] [**1.77 sq. ft.**] of wall area spaced not to exceed [**36 inches**] [**24 inches**] [**16 inches**] o.c. horizontally and **16 inches** o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within **12 inches** of openings and space not more than **36 inches** apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than **24 inches** o.c. vertically.
 - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
 2. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
 - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes.

- b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
- 3. Header Bonding: Provide masonry unit headers extending not less than **3 inches** into each wythe. Space headers not more than **[8 inches] [12 inches]** clear horizontally and **16 inches** clear vertically.
- B. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
- D. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units as well as masonry bonding.
- E. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
 - 1. Provide individual metal ties not more than **[8 inches] [16 inches]** o.c.
 - 2. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
 - 3. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than **[24 inches] [48 inches]** o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

3.7 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
 - 1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for **[4.5 sq. ft.] [2.67 sq. ft.] [1.77 sq. ft.]** of wall area spaced not to exceed **24 inches** o.c. horizontally and **16 inches** o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within **12 inches** of openings and space not more than **36 inches** apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than **24 inches** o.c. vertically.
 - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
 - b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 - 2. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
 - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use tab-type reinforcement.

- b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
 - c. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 - 3. Header Bonding: Provide masonry unit headers extending not less than **3 inches** into each wythe. Space headers not more than **[8 inches]** **[12 inches]** clear horizontally and **16 inches** clear vertically.
 - 4. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- D. Parge cavity face of backup wythe in a single coat approximately **3/8 inch** thick. Trowel face of parge coat smooth.
- E. Installing Cavity Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately **12 inches** o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
- 1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

3.8 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to concrete and masonry and reinforced concrete backup with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
- 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors to concrete and masonry and reinforced concrete backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
 - a. Hohmann & Barnard DW-10HS, 14 Ga., 3/16" Dia, w/ Vee byna-tie, 3" all type 304 stainless steel
 - 2. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
 - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **18 inches** o.c. vertically and **24 inches** o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each **2 sq. ft.** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches** of openings and at intervals, not exceeding **8 inches**, around perimeter.

4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 25 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each [2.67 sq. ft.] [3.5 sq. ft.] of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches, around perimeter.
5. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 24 inches, around perimeter.

3.9 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.10 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
 1. Provide an open space not less than [1/2 inch] [1 inch] [2 inches] wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry [**as follows**] [**using one of the following methods**]:
 - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
 - 1. Saw cut vertical joints in existing brick veneer where indicated on plans, full depth of veneer
 - 2. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint **4 inches** in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
 - 3. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than **3/8 inch** for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

3.12 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. replacement masonry lintels where shown on plans. Install replacement masonry lintels where shown on plans.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches** at each jamb unless noted otherwise.

3.13 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.

B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of **8 inches**. Fasten upper edge of flashing with termination.
3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of **6 inches** into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches** at ends and turn up not less than **2 inches** to form end dams.
4. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than **1-1/2 inches** or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
5. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
6. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.

C. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.

1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
 - a. Hohmann & Barnard No. 343 weep hole or Approved Equal
2. Space weep holes formed from **16 inches** o.c. Horizontal

3.14 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
9. Clean limestone units to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 2000

SECTION 05 1200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Structural steel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
 - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A6/A6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
 - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "protected zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
- E. Demand-Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the seismic-load-resisting system and which are indicated as "demand critical" or "seismic critical" on Drawings.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

19-1436B COMU Water Filtration Plant

05 1200

- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
 - 2. ANSI/AISC 341.
 - 3. ANSI/AISC 360.
 - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
 - 1. Option 2: Fabricator's experienced steel detailer shall select or complete connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303.
 - a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated.
 - b. Use Allowable Stress Design; data are given at service-load level.

2. Option 3 and 3A: Design connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 by fabricator's qualified professional engineer. Member reinforcement at connections is indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Use Allowable Stress Design; data are given at service-load level.
- C. Construction: Moment frame.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
 1. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
 2. Channels, Angles, M -Shapes: 60 percent.
 3. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
 4. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
 5. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
- C. W-Shapes: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50.
- D. Channels, Angles, M -Shapes: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50.
- E. Plate and Bar: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50.

2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959/F959M, Type 325-1, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength A490 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6/A6M and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
 - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.5 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces [unless indicated to be painted].
 - 6. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
 - 7. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.

- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
- C. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner [or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16].
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 - 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction and structural-steel framing until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing, and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting."
- D. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings."

END OF SECTION 05 1200

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 06 1000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 - 2. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
 - 3. Wood furring and grounds.
 - 4. Wood sleepers.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 3. Engineered wood products.
 - 4. Shear panels.
 - 5. Power-driven fasteners.
 - 6. Post-installed anchors.
 - 7. Metal framing anchors.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species. any of the following species: the following species:
 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Northern species; NLGA.
- C. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 3. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- J. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- K. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- L. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- M. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- N. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- O. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- size furring at 24 inches o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 1000

SECTION 06 1600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- B. Air-Barrier and Water-Resistant Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Performance: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, and seals with adjacent construction, shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Certified Wood: The following wood products shall be labeled according to the AF&PA's Sustainable Forestry Initiative, be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004, or be certified and labeled according to the standards of the Programme for Endorsement of Forest Certification.

1. Plywood.
 2. Oriented strand board.
 3. Particleboard underlayment.
 4. Hardboard underlayment.
- B. Certified Wood: The following wood products shall [contain not less than 60 percent] [be made from] certified wood tracked through a chain-of-custody process. Certified wood documentation shall be provided by sources certified through a forest certification system with principles, criteria, and standards developed using ISO/IEC Guide 59 or the World Trade Organization's "WTO Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade."
1. Plywood.
 2. Oriented strand board.
 3. Particleboard underlayment.
 4. Hardboard underlayment.
- C. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- D. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.
1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.

- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

END OF SECTION 06 1600

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 07 0150.19 - PREPARATION FOR REROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Full tear-off of roof system at areas indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Removal of flashings and counterflashings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for use of premises and for phasing requirements.
 - 2. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary construction and environmental-protection measures for reroofing preparation.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting removal Work, conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing tear-off, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Reroofing preparation, including roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
 - b. Temporary protection requirements for existing roofing system components that are to remain.
 - c. Existing roof drains and roof drainage during each stage of reroofing, and roof-drain plugging and plug removal.
 - d. Construction schedule and availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 - e. Existing roof deck conditions requiring Architect notification.
 - f. Existing roof deck removal procedures and Owner notifications.

- g. Condition and acceptance of existing roof deck and base flashing substrate for reuse.
- h. Structural loading limitations of roof deck during reroofing.
- i. Base flashings, special roofing details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect reroofing.
- j. HVAC shutdown and sealing of air intakes.
- k. Shutdown of fire-suppression, -protection, and -alarm and -detection systems.
- l. Asbestos removal and discovery of asbestos-containing materials.
- m. Governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
- n. Existing conditions that may require Architect notification before proceeding.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Temporary Roofing Submittal: Product data and description of temporary roofing system.
 - 1. If temporary roof remains in place, include surface preparation requirements needed to receive permanent roof, and submit a letter from roofing manufacturer stating acceptance of the temporary roof and that its inclusion does not adversely affect the new roofing system's resistance to fire and wind .

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - 1. Include certificate that Installer is approved by warrantor of existing roofing system.
 - 2. Include certificate that Installer is licensed to perform asbestos abatement.
- B. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Fastener pull-out test report.
- C. Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including exterior and interior finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as having been damaged by reroofing operations.
 - 1. Submit before Work begins.
- D. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of demolished roofing materials and hazardous wastes, such as asbestos-containing materials, by a landfill facility licensed to accept them.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certified statement from manufacturer for existing warranted roof system stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Approved by warrantor of existing roofing system to work on existing roofing.
- B. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning roofing removal.
 - 2. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately below reroofing area.
 - 1. Conduct reroofing so Owner's operations are not disrupted.
 - 2. Provide Owner with not less than 72 hours' written notice of activities that may affect Owner's operations.
 - 3. Coordinate work activities daily with Owner so Owner has adequate advance notice to place protective dust and water-leakage covers over sensitive equipment and furnishings, shut down HVAC and fire-alarm or -detection equipment if needed, and evacuate occupants from below work area.
 - 4. Before working over structurally impaired areas of deck, notify Owner to evacuate occupants from below affected area.
 - a. Verify that occupants below work area have been evacuated before proceeding with work over impaired deck area.
- B. Protect building to be reroofed, adjacent buildings, walkways, site improvements, exterior plantings, and landscaping from damage or soiling from reroofing operations.
- C. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
- D. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
 - 1. A roof moisture survey of existing roofing system is available for Contractor's reference.
 - 2. The results of an analysis of test cores from existing roofing system are available for Contractor's reference.

3. Construction Drawings for existing roofing system are provided for Contractor's convenience and information, but they are not a warranty of existing conditions. They are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Contractor's own investigations. Contractor is responsible for conclusions derived from existing documents.
- E. Weather Limitations: Proceed with reroofing preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering existing roofing system or building.
1. Remove only as much roofing in one day as can be made watertight in the same day.
- F. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials, such as asbestos-containing materials, will be encountered in the Work.
1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
 2. Existing roof will be left no less watertight than before removal.
 3. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner.
 - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- G. Hazardous Materials: A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
1. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
 2. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except according to procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
 3. Coordinate reroofing preparation with hazardous material remediation to prevent water from entering existing roofing system or building.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during reroofing, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing roofing system warranty issued by manufacturer for existing warranted roof system.
1. Notify warrantor before proceeding with the Work.
 2. Notify warrantor of existing roofing system on completion of reroofing, and obtain documentation verifying that existing roofing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect.
 - a. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY PROTECTION MATERIALS

- A. EPS Insulation: ASTM C 578.
- B. Plywood: DOC PS 1, Grade CD, Exposure 1.
- C. OSB: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1.

2.2 TEMPORARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. Design and selection of materials for temporary roofing are Contractor's responsibilities.
- B. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft..
- C. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601/D 4601M, Type II, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet.
- D. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178/D 2178M, Type IV, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
- E. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41/D 41M.
- F. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312/D 312M, Type III or IV.
- G. Base Sheet Fasteners: Capped head, factory-coated steel fasteners, listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
 - 1. Protect existing roofing system that is not to be reroofed.
 - 2. Loosely lay 1-inch- minimum thick, EPS insulation over existing roofing in areas not to be reroofed.
 - a. Loosely lay 15/32-inch plywood or OSB panels over EPS. Extend EPS past edges of plywood or OSB panels a minimum of 1 inch.

3. Limit traffic and material storage to areas of existing roofing that have been protected.
 4. Maintain temporary protection and leave in place until replacement roofing has been completed. Remove temporary protection on completion of reroofing.
 5. Comply with requirements of existing roof system manufacturer's warranty requirements.
- B. Seal or isolate windows that may be exposed to airborne substances created in removal of existing materials.
 - C. Shut off rooftop utilities and service piping before beginning the Work.
 - D. Test existing roof drains to verify that they are not blocked or restricted.
 1. Immediately notify Architect of any blockages or restrictions.
 - E. Coordinate with Owner to shut down air-intake equipment in the vicinity of the Work.
 1. Cover air-intake louvers before proceeding with reroofing work that could affect indoor air quality or activate smoke detectors in the ductwork.
 - F. During removal operations, have sufficient and suitable materials on-site to facilitate rapid installation of temporary protection in the event of unexpected rain.
 - G. Maintain roof drains in functioning condition to ensure roof drainage at end of each workday.
 1. Prevent debris from entering or blocking roof drains and conductors.
 - a. Use roof-drain plugs specifically designed for this purpose.
 - b. Remove roof-drain plugs at end of each workday, when no work is taking place, or when rain is forecast.
 2. If roof drains are temporarily blocked or unserviceable due to roofing system removal or partial installation of new roofing system, provide alternative drainage method to remove water and eliminate ponding.
 - a. Do not permit water to enter into or under existing roofing system components that are to remain.
- 3.2 ROOF TEAR-OFF
- A. Notify Owner each day of extent of roof tear-off proposed for that day and obtain authorization to proceed.
 - B. Lower removed roofing materials to ground and onto lower roof levels, using dust-tight chutes or other acceptable means of removing materials from roof areas.

- C. Remove aggregate ballast from roofing. Store aggregate ballast for reuse in manner not to exceed structural loading limitations of roof deck.
- D. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced, built-up bituminous roofing using a power broom.
- E. Remove pavers and accessories from roofing.
 - 1. Store and protect pavers and accessories for reuse in manner not to exceed structural loading limitations of roof deck.
 - 2. Discard cracked pavers.
- F. Remove ballast, protection mat, and EPS insulation from protected roofing membrane.
 - 1. Discard EPS insulation that is damaged or exceeds 8 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Store EPS insulation for reuse and protect it from physical damage.
 - 3. Store ballast for reuse in manner not to exceed structural loading limitations of roof deck.
- G. Full Roof Tear-off: Where indicated on Drawings, remove existing roofing and other roofing system components down to the existing roof deck.
 - 1. Remove substrate board vapor retarder roof insulation and cover board.
 - 2. Remove base flashings and counter flashings.
 - 3. Remove perimeter edge flashing and gravel stops.
 - 4. Remove copings.
 - 5. Remove expansion-joint covers.
 - 6. Remove flashings at pipes, curbs, mechanical equipment, and other penetrations.
 - 7. Remove roof drains indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - 8. Remove wood blocking, curbs, and nailers.
 - 9. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry.
 - a. Remove unadhered bitumen, unadhered felts, and wet felts.
 - 10. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck.
 - a. A maximum of 15 lb/100 sq. ft. of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
 - 11. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface.

3.3 DECK PREPARATION

- A. Inspect deck after tear-off of roofing system.

PREPARATION FOR REROOFING

- B. If broken or loose fasteners that secure deck panels to one another or to structure are observed, or if deck appears or feels inadequately attached, immediately notify Architect.
 - 1. Do not proceed with installation until directed by Architect.
 - C. If deck surface is unsuitable for receiving new roofing or if structural integrity of deck is suspect, immediately notify Architect.
 - 1. Do not proceed with installation until directed by Architect.
 - D. Provide additional deck securement as indicated on Drawings.
 - E. Replace steel deck as indicated on Drawings.
 - F. Replace steel deck as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Deck replacement will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
 - G. Prepare and paint steel deck surface.
 - 1. Painting and preparation for painting is specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting."
 - H. Replace plywood roof sheathing as indicated on Drawings.
 - I. Replace plywood roof sheathing as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Roof sheathing replacement will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
- 3.4 TEMPORARY ROOFING
- A. Install approved temporary roofing over area to be reroofed.
 - B. Remove temporary roofing before installing new roofing.
- 3.5 ROOF RE-COVER PREPARATION
- A. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing fastener buttons projecting above roofing, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
 - 1. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced, built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.

2. Scarify surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards.
 3. Broom clean existing substrate.
 4. Coordinate with Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections.
 5. Verify that existing substrate is dry.
 - a. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
 6. Remove materials that are wet or damp.
 - a. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
- B. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing fastener buttons projecting above roofing, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
1. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced, built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
 2. Shave surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards.
 3. Broom clean existing substrate.
 4. Coordinate with Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections.
 5. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with installation.
 - a. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
 6. Remove materials that are wet and damp.
 - a. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
- C. Remove blisters and areas of roofing not fully adhered.
- D. Remove mechanically attached roofing fastener buttons projecting above roofing and other substrate irregularities that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
1. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced, built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
 2. Clean substrate of contaminants, such as dirt, debris, oil, and grease, that can affect adhesion of coated foamed roofing.
 3. Power vacuum the existing roof surface.

- a. If recommended by foam manufacturer, prime dried surface at recommended rate with recommended primer.
- 4. Scarify surface of coated polyurethane roofing as necessary to achieve a suitable substrate for new roofing.
- 5. Verify that surface is dry by pressing litmus paper to surface areas most likely to retain moisture, such as shaded areas and low spots.
 - a. If paper changes color, surface is too wet to apply foam.
- 6. Build up isolated low spots on existing roofing with sprayed foam specified in Section 07 5700 "Coated Foamed Roofing" to prevent ponding.

3.6 BASE FLASHING REMOVAL

- A. Remove existing base flashings.
 - 1. Clean substrates of contaminants, such as asphalt, sheet materials, dirt, and debris.
- B. Do not damage metal counterflashings that are to remain.
- C. Inspect parapet sheathing, wood blocking, curbs, and nailers for deterioration and damage.
 - 1. If parapet sheathing, wood blocking, curbs, or nailers have deteriorated, immediately notify Architect.
- D. Remove existing parapet sheathing and replace with new parapet sheathing to comply with Section 06 1600 "Sheathing."
 - 1. If parapet framing, wood blocking, curbs, or nailers have deteriorated, immediately notify Architect.
- E. When directed by Architect, replace parapet framing, wood blocking, curbs, and nailers to comply with Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry."

3.7 DISPOSAL

- A. Collect demolished materials and place in containers.
 - 1. Promptly dispose of demolished materials.
 - 2. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 - 3. Storage or sale of demolished items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- B. Transport and legally dispose of demolished materials off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 07 0150.19

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glass-fiber board.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS-FIBER BOARD

- A. Insulation shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 16.5 mcg/cu. m or 13.5 ppb, whichever is less, except for insulation manufactured without formaldehyde.

- B. Insulation shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Glass-Fiber Board, Unfaced <Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C612, Type IA; unfaced, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E84[, passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics]. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft, thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Owens Corning.
 - d. Georgia-Pacific, Building Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CURTAIN-WALL INSULATION

- A. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 2100

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 07 2713 - MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes self-adhering, vapor-retarding, modified bituminous sheet air barriers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of products.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with air barrier.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.

2.3 SELF-ADHERING SHEET AIR BARRIER

- A. Modified Bituminous Sheet: 40-mil- thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- thick, cross-laminated polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer that complies with VOC limits.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR BARRIERS

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc; CCW-705CCW-705 HTCCW-705 LT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier High Temperature Wall MembranePerm-A-Barrier Low Temperature Wall MembranePerm-A-Barrier Wall Membrane.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin SABlueskin SA HTBlueskin SA LT.
 - d. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard 400 Sheet Air Barrier.
 - e. Rubber Polymer Corporation, Inc.; Rub-R-Wall SA.
 - f. Tremco Incorporated; ExoAir 110/110LT.
 - g. W.R. Meadows, Inc; SealTight Air-Shield.
 - h. Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation.
2. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Air Permeance: Maximum Insert value pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Tensile Strength: Minimum Insert value; ASTM D 412, Die C.
 - c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum Insert number percent; ASTM D 412, Die C.
 - d. Puncture Resistance: Minimum Insert value; ASTM E 154/E 154M.
 - e. Water Absorption: Maximum Insert number percent weight gain after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D 570.
 - f. Vapor Permeance: Maximum Insert value; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method.
 - g. Adhesion to Substrate: Minimum Insert value when tested according to ASTM D 4541 as modified by ABAA.
 - h. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

- B. Aluminum-Faced Modified Bituminous Sheet: 40-mil- thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- thick, cross-laminated polyethylene film faced with aluminum foil, with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer that complies with VOC limits.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 - 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test concrete substrates for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching membrane.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

- H. Bridge expansion joints discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details and according to recommendations in ASTM D 6135 to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F, install self-adhering, modified bituminous air-barrier sheet produced for low-temperature application. Do not install low-temperature sheet if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F.
 - 2. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
- B. Prepare, treat, and seal inside and outside corners and vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations with termination mastic and according to ASTM D 6135.
- C. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier sheet on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- D. Apply and firmly adhere air-barrier sheets over area to receive air barrier. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams, and stagger end laps to ensure airtight installation.
 - 1. Apply sheets in a shingled manner to shed water.
 - 2. Roll sheets firmly to enhance adhesion to substrate.
- E. Apply continuous air-barrier sheets over accessory strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- F. CMU: Install air-barrier sheet horizontally against the CMU beginning at base of wall. Align top edge of air-barrier sheet immediately below protruding masonry ties or joint reinforcement or ties, and firmly adhere in place.
 - 1. Overlap horizontally adjacent sheets a minimum of 2 inches and roll seams.
 - 2. Apply overlapping sheets with bottom edge slit to fit around masonry reinforcing or ties. Roll firmly into place.
 - 3. Seal around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
 - 4. Continue the sheet into all openings in the wall, such as doors and windows, and terminate at points to maintain an airtight barrier that is not visible from interior.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

- G. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air-barrier sheet with an additional 6-inch- wide, transition strip.
- H. Seal exposed edges of sheet at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- I. Install air-barrier sheet and accessory materials to form a seal with adjacent construction and to maintain a continuous air barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate air-barrier installation with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
- J. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier sheet continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- K. At end of each working day, seal top edge of air-barrier material to substrate with termination mastic.
- L. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- M. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply preformed silicone extrusion so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 - 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 - 2. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and air-barrier material.
- N. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- O. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in air barrier. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with air-barrier sheet extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- P. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.
- Q. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 - 2. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 - 3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 - 4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 - 5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 - 6. Surfaces have been primed.
 - 7. Laps in sheet materials have complied with the minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 - 8. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 - 9. Air barrier has been firmly adhered to substrate.
 - 10. Compatible materials have been used.
 - 11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 - 12. Connections between assemblies (air barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 - 13. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
 - 1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
 - 2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E 2357.
 - 3. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541 for each Insert value of installed air barrier or part thereof.
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET AIR
BARRIERS

1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed Work, using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 2713

SUMMARY OF WORK
BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Attached GENERAL CONDITIONS, BID FORM, forms a component part of this section.

1.2 SUMMARY OF WORK: City of Muskegon Water Filtration Plant: Section #3 and #11

ITEM I

1. Remove existing roofing system down to concrete decking, including but not limited to: Ballast, all previous roof layers, perimeter and penetration flashings, edge metal, fasteners, counter-flashings, termination bars, etc. Properly dispose of all materials.
2. Remove all abandoned roof penetrations and covered openings with 22-gauge flat stock sheet metal.
3. Make sure deck is clean of dirt and debris. Once inspected, prime entire deck area with a quick-dry asphalt primer at a rate of .5 gal./ sq.
4. Once deck is primed, install new vapor barrier directly to roof deck. Vapor barrier can either be torched to concrete deck using a Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Mod. Base sheet or a Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Mod. installed in Type III Generic hot asphalt.
5. Install 2-layers of 2.6" polyisocyanurate board insulation with all joints staggered in either Olybond high rise foam insulation or Generic III hot asphalt. Install 1/8":12 sloped tapered system of polyisocyanurate board insulation on top of base layers. Add saddles/ crickets where necessary to ensure water does not pond. Make sure insulation adhesion meets the wind uplift requirements and as specified on the Wind Uplift Calculation Form. Fill all voids, cracks or separations between or surrounding insulation boards to prevent thermal bridging and adhesive penetration.
6. Install sumps around and new OMG Hercules Retro Drains with drain leads at each drain location per tapered drawings provided. A full tube of water block (cut off mastic) must be used around each drain. All RetroDrains should be installed on a daily basis as the roof is completed. The inside of the drain may need to be cleaned out if asphalt or other materials are currently in the drain line. Verify the drain bowl is sitting on the deck. If not, then additional insulation may need to be added or the drain line may need to be cut. If the drain line is to be cut, then the contractor must verify that the drain line is properly supported so that the line does not fall. The contractor is required is properly support cut drain lines as part of base bid.
7. Install cants/ saddles at the base of penetration flashings.
8. Solidly hot mop a 1/4" Primed Dens Deck, or high-rise foam adhesive.
9. Install a base layer of a Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Mod underlayment:
 - a. Hot type III asphalt at a rate of 25 pounds per 100 square feet per ply. Keep bleed-out to a 1/4", assuring that the roll is always pushing adequate hot asphalt as unrolled. Use the weighted roller to get air pockets out from under the sheet and to secure all head and side laps.
 - b. Cold Applied rubber modified asphalt Interply adhesive is applied at a rate of 2.0-2.5 gallons per 100 square feet per ply. Keep bleed-out to a 1/4", assuring that the roll is always pushing adequate hot asphalt as unrolled. Use the weighted roller to get air pockets out from under the sheet and to secure all head and side laps.
10. Install a top ply of a Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane:
 - a. Hot type IV asphalt at a rate of 25 pounds per 100 square feet per ply. Keep bleed-out to a 1/4", assuring that the roll is always pushing adequate hot asphalt as unrolled. Use

the weighted roller to get air pockets out from under the sheet and to secure all head and side laps.

- b. Cold Applied rubber modified asphalt Interply Adhesive is applied at a rate of 2.0-2.5 gallons per 100 square feet per ply. Keep bleed-out to a ¼", assuring that the roll is always pushing adequate hot asphalt as unrolled. Use the weighted roller to get air pockets out from under the sheet and to secure all head and side laps.
11. Install all new perimeter and projection flashings using a base ply of Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Mod underlayment and a top ply of a dual fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane with minerals in hot Type III asphalt or in cold applied fibered asphalt mastic. All flashings should be sealed with mastic at the end of each day.
 12. Any flashing that is terminated prior to passing over the top edge of the perimeter wall or penetration is to receive a termination bar, structural adhesive along the top edge and a counter-flashing detail per provided detail drawing.
 13. Three course all flashing vertical seams with a three course of silver mastic, 6" Mesh and silver mastic. Coat vertical flashing areas with silver aluminized reflective coating. Apply coating in two coatings per the Product Data Sheet.
 14. Install Flashless metal edge system on all perimeter sides with a raised metal edge/fascia detail. Install, seal and secure the aluminum cleat per provided Application/ Installation instructions. Do not install the snap on fascia metal until the roof reflective coating application is completed.
 15. Install Flood and Gravel surfacing over entire roof field. Adhesive should be a cold-processed polymer modified coal-tar. Fully imbed 3/8" washed gravel into flood coat.
 16. All drain covers are to be painted red.
 17. Replace all damaged wood nailers and wood fascia at a unit cost per linear foot. Install additional wood nailers and wood fascia to match the additional height of the new insulation. All wood nailers and wood fascia should be covered by the modified membrane and the specified metal detail. Use compatible contractor provided screws and/or Ring Shank nails when installing the wood. Install two fasteners (pair them up) and install pairs every 16" with staggers. When using treated wood, all fasteners will comply with ASTM A153 by using type 304 or Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners and connectors for corrosion resistance.
 18. Raise all roof penetrations to a minimum 8" flashing height. The roofing contractor is responsible for connecting and disconnecting all associated equipment. Any roof curbs or duct work currently being supported by wood blocking shall be replaced with deck mounted steel curbs. All wood nailers that are visible from the inside of the facility must match the décor of the surrounding interior.
 19. Power wash all construction debris and dripped asphalt off exterior walls and ground prior to leaving work site.
 20. Clean up all debris and damage done to grounds, building and roof top (if any). Plant new grass seed if necessary. Netting must be installed to hold the new grass seed and straw in place. Plywood should be laid under the dumpster and where any heavy machinery will be driven to prevent deep ruts from forming.
 21. All existing ladders, walkways, walls, etc., must be protected so that these areas are not marked up from material spills or tracking of materials by walking. Contractor is responsible for properly protecting the parking lot, sidewalks, concrete, asphalt, etc., from damage. Contractor to cover the areas with plywood or whatever material they deem necessary for proper protection. Any damage done to these areas will be repaired by the contractor using "like" material.
 22. The contractor is responsible for taking pictures of the interior and exterior of the building before work begins. This will help to determine who is responsible for any interior damage that may take place during the roofing work.

23. All insulation and roll goods must be covered with a tarp at all times. The factory plastic is not acceptable. Wet materials are considered damaged and will not be deemed unacceptable for installation. All rolls goods must be standing up or should be thrown away.
24. All contractors are responsible for roof cores, removing existing coping, metal wall panels, etc..., at time of the pre-bid review for verification of existing roof system and building structure and wall composition before proceeding with their project bid.

The scope of work supersedes any discrepancies in the additional specification sections and/or data sheets. Any questions with, necessary changes to the scope of work, details, or products being used must be put into writing and e-mailed to **Jason Ficklen** at jficklen@abonmarche.com for approval before the change is made. Failure to put a change request into writing makes the contractor liable for any issues.

The Contractor is to read through the entire specification package prior to bidding. The scope of work is simply a guide on how the system is to be assembled, additional details on the system are included in the rest of the specification package and must be followed.

1.3 INTENT OF THE SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The intent of these specifications is to describe the material and methods of construction required for the performance of the work. In general, it is intended that the drawings shall delineate the detailed extent of the work. When there is a discrepancy between drawings, referenced specifications, and standards and this specification, this specification shall govern.

1.4 PROTECTION

- A. The contractor shall use every available precaution to provide for the safety of the property owner, visitors to the site, and all connected with the work under the Contract.
- B. All existing facilities both above & below ground shall be protected & maintained free of damage. Existing facilities shall remain operating during the period of construction unless otherwise permitted. All access roadways must remain open to traffic unless otherwise permitted.
- C. Barricades shall be erected to fence off all construction areas from operations personnel.
- D. Safety Requirements:
 1. All application, material handling, and associated equipment shall conform to and be operated in conformance with OSHA safety requirements.
 2. Comply with federal, state, and local and owner fire and safety requirements.
 3. Advise owner whenever work is expected to be hazardous to owner employees and/or operations.
 4. Maintain a crewman as a floor guard whenever roof decking is being repaired or replaced and whenever any roofing is being removed.
 5. Maintain proper fire extinguisher within easy access whenever power tools, roofing kettles, and torches are being used. A MINIMUM OF A 2 HOUR FIRE WATCH SHALL BE STRICTLY ADHERED TO WHENEVER PROPANE TORCHES ARE IN USE.
 6. ALL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS OF THE BUILDING OWNER MUST BE FOLLOWED. NO EXCEPTIONS WILL BE PERMITTED. SAFETY ORIENTATION MEETING REQUIRED PRIOR TO PERFORMING ANY WORK.

1.5 HOUSEKEEPING

- A. Keep materials neat and orderly.
- B. Remove scrap, waste and debris from the project area.
- C. Maintenance of clean conditions while work is in progress and cleanup when work is completed shall be in strict accordance with the "General Conditions" of this contract.
- D. Fire protection during construction.
- E. Follow all requirements established by the building owner.
- F. **All building measurements are the sole responsibility of the contractor**

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07550
MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cold Applied 2-Ply Asphalt Roofing
- B. Hot Applied 2-Ply Asphalt Roofing
- C. Accessories.
- D. Edge Treatment and Roof Penetration Flashings.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 070150.19 -Roof Deck Substrate Preparation.
- B. Section 05300 - Metal Roof Deck.
- C. Section 06100 - Rough Carpentry.
- D. Section 06114 - Wood Blocking and Curbing: Wood nailers and cant strips.
- E. Section 07220 - Insulation Board: Insulation and fastening.
- F. Section 07620 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Weather protection for base flashings.
- G. Section 07710 - Manufactured Roof Specialties: Counter flashing gravel stops, and fascia.
- H. Section 15120 - Piping Specialties: Roof Drains, Sumps.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM D 41 - Standard Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Damp proofing, and Waterproofing.
- B. ASTM D 312 - Standard Specification for Asphalt used in Roofing.
- C. ASTM D 451 - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Granular Mineral Surfacing for Asphalt Roofing Products.
- D. ASTM D 1970 - Specification for Sheet Materials, Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous, Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection.
- E. ASTM D 1079 Standard Terminology Relating to Roofing, Waterproofing and Bituminous Materials.
- F. ASTM D 1227 Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing.
- G. ASTM D 1863 Standard Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing.
- H. ASTM D 2178 Standard Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing.

- I. ASTM D 2824 Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coating.
- J. ASTM D 4586 Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free.
- K. ASTM D 4601 Standard Specification for Asphalt Coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing.
- L. ASTM D 5147 Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials.
- M. ASTM D 6162 Standard Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements.
- N. ASTM D 6163 Standard Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements.
- O. ASTM D 6164 - Standard Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements.
- P. ASTM D 6754 - Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester (KEE) Sheet Roofing.
- Q. ASTM D 6757 - Standard Specification for Underlayment Felt Containing Inorganic Fibers Used in Steep-Slope Roofing.
- R. ASTM E 108 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Test of Roof Coverings
- S. Factory Mutual Research (FM): Roof Assembly Classifications.
- T. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA): Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
- U. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- V. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): Fire Hazard Classifications.
- W. Warnock Hersey (WH): Fire Hazard Classifications.
- X. ANSI-SPRI ES-1 Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems used with Low Slope Roofing Systems.
- Y. ASCE 7, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures
- Z. UL - Fire Resistance Directory.
- AA. FM Approvals - Roof Coverings and/or RoofNav assembly database.

1.4 DESIGN / PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform work in accordance with all federal, state and local codes.
- B. Exterior Fire Test Exposure: Roof system shall achieve a UL, FM or WH Class rating for roof slopes indicated on the Drawings as follows:
 - 1. Factory Mutual Class A Rating.
 - 2. Underwriters Laboratory Class A Rating.
 - 3. Warnock Hersey Class A Rating.
- C. Design Requirements:
 - 1. Uniform Wind Uplift Load Capacity (required for each roof section)

- 1) Installed roof system shall withstand negative (uplift) design wind loading pressures complying with the following criteria.
- 2) Attachment shall be installed exactly as given in Part 3.
 - a) Design Code: ASCE 7-05, Method 2 for Components and Cladding.
 - b) Category [IV] Building with an Importance Factor of [1]
 - c) Wind Speed: [120] mph
 - d) Exposure Category: [D]
 - e) Design Roof Height: [20] feet.
 - f) Minimum Building Width: [90] feet.
 - g) Roof Pitch: [1/8] inches per foot.
 - h) Topographic Factor: [1]
 - i) Roof Area Design Uplift Pressure:
 - 1) Zone 1 – Field of roof [24] psf
 - 2) Zone 2 – Eaves, ridges, hips and rakes [40.3] psf
 - 3) Zone 3 – Corners [60.7] psi
- 3) Live Load: 20 psf, or not to exceed original building design.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings including installation details of roofing, flashing, fastening, insulation and vapor barrier, including notation of roof slopes and fastening patterns of insulation and base modified bitumen membrane, prior to job start.
- D. Design Pressure Calculations: Submit design pressure calculations for the roof area in accordance with ASCE 7 and local Building Code requirements. Include a roof system attachment analysis report, certifying the system's compliance with applicable wind load requirements before Work begins.
- E. LEED Submittals: Provide documentation of how the requirements of Credit will be met:
 1. List of proposed materials with recycled content. Indicate post-consumer recycled content and pre-consumer recycled content for each product having recycled content.
 2. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
 3. Product reflectivity and emissivity criteria to qualify for one point under the LEED credit category, Credit 7.2, Landscape & Exterior Design to Reduce Heat Island - Roof.
- F. Recycled or Bio-Based Materials: Provide third party certification through UL Environment of roof System membranes containing recycled or bio-based materials.
- G. Verification Samples: For each modified bituminous membrane ply product specified, two samples, minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- H. Manufacturer's Certificates: Provide to certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- I. Test Reports: Submit test reports, prepared by an independent testing agency, for all modified bituminous sheet roofing, indicating compliance with ASTM D5147.

- J. Manufacturer's Fire Compliance Certificate: Certify that the roof system furnished is approved by Factory Mutual (FM), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Warnock Hersey (WH) or approved third party testing facility in accordance with ASTM E108, Class A for external fire and meets local or nationally recognized building codes.
- K. Closeout Submittals: Provide manufacturer's maintenance instructions that include recommendations for periodic inspection and maintenance of all completed roofing work. Provide product warranty executed by the manufacturer. Assist Owner in preparation and submittal of roof installation acceptance certification as may be necessary in connection with fire and extended coverage insurance on roofing and associated work.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified with documented ISO 9001 certification and minimum of twelve years of documented experience and must not have been in Chapter 11 bankruptcy during the last five years.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum five years documented experience and a certified Pre-Approved Garland Contractor.
- D. Installer's Field Supervision: Maintain a full-time Supervisor/Foreman on job site during all phases of roofing work while roofing work is in progress.
- E. Product Certification: Provide manufacturer's certification that materials are manufactured in the United States and conform to requirements specified herein, are chemically and physically compatible with each other, and are suitable for inclusion within the total roof system specified herein.
- F. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of roof system from a single manufacturer. Secondary products that are required shall be recommended and approved in writing by the roofing system Manufacturer. Upon request of the Architect or Owner, submit Manufacturer's written approval of secondary components in list form, signed by an authorized agent of the Manufacturer.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Convene minimum two weeks prior to commencing Work of this section.
- B. Review installation procedures and coordination required with related Work.
- C. Inspect and make notes of job conditions prior to installation:
 - 1. Record minutes of the conference and provide copies to all parties present.
 - 2. Identify all outstanding issues in writing designating the responsible party for follow-up action and the timetable for completion.
 - 3. Installation of roofing system shall not begin until all outstanding issues are resolved to the satisfaction of the Architect.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging with labels intact until ready for installation.
- B. Store all roofing materials in a dry place, on pallets or raised platforms, out of direct exposure to the elements until time of application. Store materials at least 4 inches above ground level and covered with "breathable" tarpaulins.

- C. Stored in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer prior to their application or installation. Store roll goods on end on a clean flat surface except store KEE-Stone FB 60 rolls flat on a clean flat surface. No wet or damaged materials will be used in the application.
- D. Store at room temperature wherever possible, until immediately prior to installing the roll. During winter, store materials in a heated location with a 50-degree F (10 degree C) minimum temperature, removed only as needed for immediate use. Keep materials away from open flame or welding sparks.
- E. Avoid stockpiling of materials on roofs without first obtaining acceptance from the Architect/Engineer.
- F. Adhesive storage shall be between the range of above 50-degree F (10 degree C) and below 80-degree F (27 degree C). Area of storage shall be constructed for flammable storage.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work with installing associated metal flashings as work of this section proceeds.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Upon completion of the work, provide the Manufacturer's written and signed Edge-To-Edge NDL System Warranty, warranting that, if a leak develops in the roof during the term of this warranty, due either to defective material or defective workmanship by the installer, the manufacturer shall provide the Owner, at the Manufacturer's expense, with the labor and material necessary to return the defective area to a watertight condition including Garland Metal Components.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. 30 years from date of acceptance.
- B. Installer is to guarantee all work against defects in materials and workmanship for a period indicated following final acceptance of the Work.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. 2 years from date of acceptance.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:
 - 1. The Garland Company
 - 2. Soprema
 - 3. Ecology Roof Systems
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01600.
- C. The Products specified are intended and the Standard of Quality for the products required for this project. If other products are proposed the bidder must disclose in the bid the manufacturer and the products that they intend to use on the Project. If no manufacturer and products are listed, the bid may be accepted only with the use of products specified.

1. Bidder will not be allowed to change materials after the bid opening date.
2. If alternate products are included in the bid, the products must be equal to or exceed the products specified. Supporting technical data shall be submitted to the Architect/ Owner for approval prior to acceptance.
3. In making a request for substitution, the Bidder/Roofing Contractor represents that it has:
 - a. Personally, investigated the proposed product or method, and determined that it is equal or superior in all respects to that specified.
 - b. Will provide the same guarantee for substitution as for the product and method specified.
 - c. Will coordinate installation of accepted substitution in work, making such changes as may be required for work to be completed in all respects.
 - d. Will waive all claims for additional cost related to substitution, which consequently become apparent.
 - e. Cost data is complete and includes all related cost under his/her contract or other contracts, which may be affected by the substitution.
 - f. Will reimburse the Owner for all redesign cost by the Architect for accommodation of the substitution.
4. Architect/ Owner reserves the right to be the final authority on the acceptance or rejection of any or all bids, proposed alternate roofing systems or materials that has met ALL specified requirement criteria.
5. Failure to submit substitution package, or any portion thereof requested, will result in immediate disqualification and consideration for that particular contractors request for manufacturer substitution.

2.2 COLD APPLIED 2-PLY ROOF SYSTEM:

- A. Vapor Barrier: One ply bonded to prepared substrate. Deck must be primed with asphaltic primer.
 1. 110-mil Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Mod base sheet
- B. Base (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive:
 1. 80-mil Fiberglass-reinforced SBS modified underlayment
- C. Modified Cap (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive:
 1. 80-mil Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane
- D. Interply Adhesive: (1 and 2)
 1. Cold Applied rubber modified asphalt Interply adhesive
- E. Flashing Base Ply: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive:
 1. 80-mil Fiberglass-reinforced SBS modified underlayment
- F. Flashing Cap (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive:
 1. 145-mil Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane
- G. Flashing Ply Adhesive:
 1. Cold Applied fibered asphalt mastic
- H. Surfacing:
 1. Flood and Gravel:
 - a. Cold process polymer modified coal tar topcoat.
 - b. 3/8" washed pea gravel

2.3 HOT APPLIED 2-PLY ASPHALT ROOFING –

- A. Vapor Barrier: One ply bonded to prepared substrate. Deck must be primed with asphaltic

primer.

1. 40-mil Dual fiberglass reinforced SBS-Mod
- B. Base (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive:
 1. 80-mil Fiberglass-reinforced SBS modified underlayment
- C. Modified Cap (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive.
 1. 80-mil Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane
- D. Interply Adhesive: (1 and 2)
 1. Generic Type III Asphalt:
- E. Flashing Base Ply: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive: except torch sheet.
 1. 80-mil Fiberglass-reinforced SBS modified underlayment
- F. Flashing Cap (Ply) Sheet: One ply bonded to the prepared substrate with Interply Adhesive: except torch sheet.
 1. 145-mil Dual Fiberglass-reinforced SBS Modified Bitumen membrane
- G. Flashing Ply Adhesive:
 1. Generic Type III Asphalt
- H. Surfacing:
 1. Flood and Gravel
 - a. Cold process polymer modified coal tar topcoat
 - b. 3/8" washed pea gravel

2.4 ACCESSORIES:

- A. Roof Insulation: In accordance with Section 07220.
- B. Roof Insulation: Provide G-P Gypsum DenDeck Prime, G-P Gypsum DenDeck DuraGuard, USG Securrock for proper adhesion of the base sheet in accordance with Section 07220.

2.5 EDGE TREATMENT AND ROOF PENETRATION FLASHINGS

- A. Pre-Manufactured Edge Metal:
 1. Zinc-coated steel, ASTM A653, coating designation G-90, in thickness of 24 gauge, 22 gauge or 20 gauge, 36" to 48" by coil length, chemically treated, commercial or lock-forming quality
 2. Aluminum, ASTM B209, alloy 3105-H14, in thickness of .032" nom. or .040" nom. or .050" nom. or .063" nom.
- B. Pre-Manufactured Edge Metal:
 1. Base Anchor: 6005A-T61 extruded aluminum.
 2. Compression Seal for top of anchor: TPE thermoplastic elastomer.
 3. Sealant for Flange: Green-Lock Sealant XL: Single-component high performance 100% solids, interior and exterior polyether joint sealant.
- C. Pre-Manufactured Edge Metal Finishes:
 1. Exposed and unexposed surfaces for mill finish flashing, fascia, and coping cap, as shipped from the mill
 2. Exposed surfaces for coated panels:
 - a. Steel Finishes: fluorocarbon finish. Epoxy primer baked both sides, .2-.25 mils thickness as approved by finish coat manufacturer.
Weathering finish as referred by National Coil Coaters Association (NCCA).
Provided with the following properties.

- 1) Pencil Hardness: ASTM D3363, HB-H / NCCA II-2.
 - 2) Bend: ASTM D-4145, O-T / NCCA II-19
 - 3) Cross-Hatch Adhesion: ASTM D3359, no loss of adhesion
 - 4) Gloss (60 deg. angle): ASTM D523, 25+/-5%
 - 5) Reverse Bend: ASTM D2794, no cracking or loss of adhesion
 - 6) Nominal Thickness: ASTM D1005
 - a) Primer: 0.2 mils
 - b) Topcoat, 0.7 mils min
 - c) Clear Coat (optional, only used with 22 ga. steel) 0.3 mils
 - 7) Color: Provide as specified. (Subject to minimum quantities)
- D. Pitch pans, Rain Collar 24 gauge stainless or 20oz (567gram) copper. All joints should be welded/soldered watertight. See details for design.
- E. Drain Flashings should be 4lb (1.8kg) sheet lead formed and rolled.
- F. Plumbing stacks should be 4lb (1.8kg) sheet lead formed and rolled.
- G. Liquid Flashing - An asphaltic-polyurethane, low odor, liquid flashing material designed for specialized details unable to be waterproofed with typical modified membrane flashings.
 1. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 412: 400 psi
 2. Elongation, ASTM D 412: 300%
 3. Density @77 deg. F 8.5 lb/gal typical
- H. Fabricated Flashings: Fabricated flashings and trim are specified in Section 07620.
 1. Fabricated flashings and trim shall conform to the detail requirements of SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and/or the CDA Copper Development Association "Copper in Architecture - Handbook" as applicable.
- I. Manufactured Roof Specialties: Shop fabricated copings, fascia, gravel stops, control joints, expansion joints, joint covers and related flashings and trim are specified in Section 07710.
 1. Manufactured roof specialties shall conform to the detail requirements of SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and/or the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" as applicable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Inspect and approve the deck condition, slopes and fastener backing if applicable, parapet walls, expansion joints, roof drains, stack vents, vent outlets, nailers and surfaces and elements.
- C. Verify that work penetrating the roof deck, or which may otherwise affect the roofing, has been properly completed.
- D. If substrate preparation and other conditions are the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
 1. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
 2. Fill substrate surface voids that are greater than 1/4-inch-wide with an acceptable fill material.

3. Roof surface to receive roofing system shall be smooth, clean, free from loose gravel, dirt and debris, dry and structurally sound.
 4. Wherever necessary, all surfaces to receive roofing materials shall be power broom and vacuumed to remove debris and loose matter prior to starting work.
 5. Do not apply roofing during inclement weather. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp, frozen, dirty, or dusty surfaces.
 6. Fasteners and plates for fastening components mechanically to the substrate shall provide a minimum pull-out capacity of 300 lbs. (136 k) per fastener. Base or ply sheets attached with cap nails require a minimum pullout capacity of 40 lb. per nail.
 7. Prime decks where required, in accordance with requirements and recommendations of the primer and deck manufacturer.
- B. Precast concrete:
1. Decks shall be clean, dry, fully cured and free of flaws and attached securely to the supporting structure as recommended by the deck manufacturer.
 2. All joints shall be caulked or grouted.
 3. Concrete surfaces to receive roofing shall be fully primed at the rate of 1 gallon per 100 sq. ft.
 4. When applying roofing or insulation directly to the deck with asphalt, prime with asphalt/concrete primer, ASTM D41, at a rate of 1 gal/square (.4 L/m²) and allow the primer to dry prior to the application of the roofing system. Hold back bitumen at the joints approximately 4 inches (102 mm) to prevent bitumen drippage.
 5. Deck joints shall be stripped in with a 12 inch (305 mm) wide strip of modified membrane unadhered a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) immediately on either side of the joint.
- C. Poured reinforced concrete
1. Shall be smooth, dry, clean and free of ice/frost, projections and depressions. Concrete shall be fully cured and the surface shall be broom cleaned and free of release/curing agents prior to commencement of work.
 2. Prepared concrete surfaces for roofing or insulation by priming with asphalt/concrete primer conforming to ASTM D 41. Apply at a rate of approx. 1 gallon/100 sq. ft. (.4 L/m²). All primed areas shall be fully dried before proceeding with the application of the roof system. Hold back bitumen at the joints approximately 4 inches (102 mm) to prevent bitumen drippage.

3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install modified bitumen membranes and flashings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and with the recommendations provided by the National Roofing Contractors Association's Roofing & Waterproofing Manual, the Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association, and applicable codes.
- B. General: Avoid installation of modified bitumen membranes at temperatures lower than 40-45 degrees F. When work at such temperatures unavoidable use the following precautions:
1. Take extra care during cold weather installation and when ambient temperatures are affected by wind or humidity, to ensure adequate bonding is achieved between the surfaces to be joined. Use extra care at material seam welds and where adhesion of the applied product to the appropriately prepared substrate as the substrate can be affected by such temperature constraints as well.
 2. Unrolling of cold materials, under low ambient conditions must be avoided to prevent the likelihood of unnecessary stress cracking. Rolls must be at least 40 degrees F at the time of application. If the membrane roll becomes stiff or difficult to install, it must be replaced with roll from a heated storage area.
- C. Commence installation of the roofing system at the lowest point of the roof (or roof area), working up the slope toward the highest point. Lap sheets shingle fashion so as to constantly

shed water

- D. All slopes greater than 2:12 require back-nailing to prevent slippage of the ply sheets. Use ring or spiral-shank 1 inch cap nails, or screws and plates at a rate of 1 fastener per ply (including the membrane) at each insulation stop. Place insulation stops at 16 ft o.c. for slopes less than 3:12 and 4 feet o.c. for slopes greater than 3:12. On non-insulated systems, nail each ply directly into the deck at the rate specified above. When slope exceeds 2:12, install all plies parallel to the slope (strapping) to facilitate backnailing. Install 4 additional fasteners at the upper edge of the membrane when strapping the plies.

3.4 INSTALLATION COLD APPLIED ROOF SYSTEM

- A. Base Ply: Cut base ply sheets into 18 foot lengths and allow plies to relax before installing. Install base sheet in Interply Adhesive: applied at the rate required by the manufacturer. Shingle base sheets uniformly to achieve one ply throughout over the prepared substrate. Shingle in proper direction to shed water on each large area of roofing.
 - 1. Lap ply sheet ends 8 inches. Stagger end laps 12 inches minimum.
 - 2. Solidly bond to the substrate and adjacent ply with specified cold adhesive at the rate of 2 to 2-1/2 gallons per 100 square feet.
 - 3. Roll must push a puddle of adhesive in front of it with adhesive slightly visible at all side laps. Use care to eliminate air entrapment under the membrane.
 - 4. Install subsequent rolls of modified across the roof as above with a minimum of 4 inch side laps and 8 inch staggered end laps. Lay modified membrane in the same direction as the underlayers but the laps shall not coincide with the laps of the base layers.
 - 5. Extend plies 2 inches beyond top edges of cants at wall and projection bases.
 - 6. Install base flashing ply to all perimeter and projection details.
 - 7. Allow the one ply of base sheet to cure at least 30 minutes before installing the modified membrane. However, the modified membrane must be installed the same day as the base plies.
- B. Modified Cap Ply(s): Cut cap ply sheets into 18 foot lengths and allow plies to relax before installing. Install in interplay adhesive applied at the rate required by the manufacturer. Shingle sheets uniformly over the prepared substrate to achieve the number of plys specified. Shingle in proper direction to shed water on each large area of roofing.
 - 1. Lap ply sheet ends 8 inches. Stagger end laps 12 inches minimum.
 - 2. Solidly bond to the base layers with specified cold adhesive at the rate of 2 to 2-1/2 gallons per 100 square feet.
 - 3. Roll must push a puddle of adhesive in front of it with adhesive slightly visible at all side laps. Care should be taken to eliminate air entrapment under the membrane.
 - 4. Install subsequent rolls of modified across the roof as above with a minimum of 4 inch side laps and 8 inch staggered end laps. Lay modified membrane in the same direction as the underlayers but the laps shall not coincide with the laps of the base layers.
 - 5. Allow cold adhesive to set for 5 to 10 minutes before installing the top layer of modified membrane.
 - 6. Extend membrane 2 inches beyond top edge of all cants in full moppings of the cold adhesive as shown on the Drawings.
- C. Fibrous Cant Strips: Provide non-combustible perlite or glass fiber cant strips at all wall/curb detail treatments where angle changes are greater than 45 degrees. Cant may be set in approved cold adhesives, hot asphalt or mechanically attached with approved plates and fasteners.
- D. Wood Blocking, Nailers and Cant Strips: Provide wood blocking, nailers and cant strips as specified in Section 06114.
 - 1. Provide nailers at all roof perimeters and penetrations for fastening membrane

- flashings and sheet metal components.
2. Wood nailers should match the height of any insulation, providing a smooth and even transition between flashing and insulation areas.
 3. Nailer lengths should be spaced with a minimum 1/8-inch gap for expansion and contraction between each length or change of direction.
 4. Nailers and flashings should be fastened in accordance with Factory Mutual "Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1- 49, Perimeter Flashing" and be designed to be capable of resisting a minimum force of 200 lbs./lineal foot in any direction.
- E. Metal Work: Provide metal flashings, counter flashings, parapet coping caps and thru-wall flashings as specified in Section 07620 or Section 07710. Install in accordance with the SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or the NRCA Roofing Waterproofing manual.
- F. Termination Bar: Provide a metal termination bar or approved top edge securement at the terminus of all flashing sheets at walls and curbs. Fasten the bar a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o/c to achieve constant compression. Provide suitable, sealant at the top edge if required.
- G. Flashing Base Ply: Install flashing sheets by the same application method used for the base ply.
1. Seal curb, wall and parapet flashings with an application of mastic and mesh on a daily basis. Do not permit conditions to exist that will allow moisture to enter behind, around or under the roof or flashing membrane.
 2. Prepare all walls, penetrations, expansion joints and where shown on the Drawings to be flashed with required primer at the rate of 100 square feet per gallon. Allow primer to dry tack free.
 3. Adhere to the underlying base ply with specified flashing ply adhesive unless otherwise specified. Nail off at a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. from the finished roof at all vertical surfaces.
 4. Solidly adhere the entire flashing ply to the substrate. Secure the tops of all flashings that are not run up and over curb through termination bar fastened at 6 inches (152 mm) O.C. and sealed at top.
 5. Seal all vertical laps of flashing ply with a three-course application of trowel-grade mastic and fiberglass mesh.
 6. Coordinate counter flashing, cap flashings, expansion joints and similar work with modified bitumen roofing work as specified.
 7. Coordinate roof accessories, miscellaneous sheet metal accessory items, including piping vents and other devices with the roofing system work.
 8. Secure the top edge of the flashing sheet using a termination bar only when the wall surface above is waterproofed, or nailed 4 inches on center and covered with an acceptable counter flashing.
- H. Flashing Cap Ply:
1. Seal curb, wall and parapet flashings with an application of mastic and mesh on a daily basis. Do not permit conditions to exist that will allow moisture to enter behind, around or under the roof or flashing membrane.
 2. Prepare all walls, penetrations, expansion joints and where shown on the Drawings to be flashed with required primer at the rate of 100 square feet per gallon. Allow primer to dry tack free.
 3. Adhere to the underlying base flashing ply with specified flashing ply adhesive unless otherwise specified. Nail off at a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. from the finished roof at all vertical surfaces.
 4. Coordinate counter flashing, cap flashings, expansion joints and similar work with modified bitumen roofing work as specified.
 5. Coordinate roof accessories, miscellaneous sheet metal accessory items with the roofing system work.

6. All stripping shall be installed prior to flashing cap sheet installation.
 7. Heat and scrape granules when welding or adhering at cut areas and seams to granular surfaces at all flashings.
 8. Secure the top edge of the flashing sheet using a termination bar only when the wall surface above is waterproofed, or nailed 4 inches on center and covered with an acceptable counter flashing.
- I. Surface Coatings: Apply roof coatings in strict conformance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- J. Roof Walkways: Provide walkways in areas indicated on the Drawings.

3.5 INSTALLATION HOT APPLIED ROOF SYSTEM

- A. Base/Felt Ply(s): Install base sheet or felt plies in twenty-five (25) lbs. (11.3kg) per square of bitumen shingled uniformly to achieve one or more plies over the entire prepared substrate. Shingle in direction of slope of roof to shed water on each area of roof. Do not step on base rolls until asphalt has cooled, fish mouths should be cut and patched.
1. Lap ply sheet ends 8 inches (203 mm). Stagger end laps 2 inches (304mm) minimum.
 2. Install base flashing ply to all perimeter and projection details after membrane application.
 3. Extend plies 2 inches beyond top edges of cants at wall and projection bases.
 4. Install base flashing ply to all perimeter and projection details.
 5. Allow the one ply of base sheet to cure at least 30 minutes before installing the modified membrane. However, the modified membrane must be installed the same day as the base plies.
- B. Modified Cap Ply(s): Solidly bond the modified membrane to the base layers with specified material at the rate of 25 to thirty 30 lbs. (11-13kg) per 100 square feet.
1. Roll must push a puddle of hot material in front of it with material slightly visible at all side laps. Use care to eliminate air entrapment under the membrane. Exercise care during application to eliminate air entrapment under the membrane.
 2. Apply pressure to all seams to ensure that the laps are solidly bonded to substrate.
 3. Install subsequent rolls of modified membrane as above with a minimum of 4 inch (101 mm) side laps and 8 inch (203 mm) end laps. Stagger end laps. Apply membrane in the same direction as the previous layers but stagger the laps so they do not coincide with the laps of the base layers.
 4. Apply hot material no more than 5 feet (1.5 m) ahead of each roll being embedded.
 5. Extend membrane 2 inches (50 mm) beyond top edge of all cants in full moppings of the specified hot material.
- C. Fibrous Cant Strips: Provide non-combustible perlite or glass fiber cant strips at all wall/curb detail treatments where angle changes are greater than 45 degrees. Cant may be set in approved cold adhesives, hot asphalt or mechanically attached with approved plates and fasteners.
- D. Wood Blocking, Nailers and Cant Strips: Provide wood blocking, nailers and cant strips as specified in Section 06114.
1. Provide nailers at all roof perimeters and penetrations for fastening membrane flashings and sheet metal components.
 2. Wood nailers should match the height of any insulation, providing a smooth and even transition between flashing and insulation areas.
 3. Nailer lengths should be spaced with a minimum 1/8 inch gap for expansion and contraction between each length or change of direction.
 4. Nailers and flashings should be fastened in accordance with Factory Mutual "Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1- 49, Perimeter Flashing" and be designed to be capable of resisting a minimum force of 200 lbs/lineal foot in any direction.

- E. Metal Work: Provide metal flashings, counter flashings, parapet coping caps and thru-wall flashings as specified in Section 07620 or Section 07710. Install in accordance with the SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or the NRCA Roofing Waterproofing manual.
- F. Termination Bar: Provide a metal termination bar or approved top edge securement at the terminus of all flashing sheets at walls and curbs. Fasten the bar a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o/c to achieve constant compression. Provide suitable, sealant at the top edge if required.
- G. Flashing Base Ply: Install flashing sheets by the same application method used for the base ply.
 - 1. Seal curb, wall and parapet flashings with an application of mastic and mesh on a daily basis. Do not permit conditions to exist that will allow moisture to enter behind, around or under the roof or flashing membrane.
 - 2. Prepare all walls, penetrations, expansion joints and surfaces to be flashed with required primer at the rate of 100 square feet per gallon. Allow primer to dry tack free.
 - 3. Adhere to the underlying base flashing ply with specified hot material unless otherwise noted in these specifications. Nail off at a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. from the finished roof at all vertical surfaces.
 - 4. Solidly adhere the entire sheet of flashing membrane to the substrate.
 - 5. Seal all vertical laps of flashing membrane with a three-course application of trowel-grade mastic and mesh.
 - 6. Coordinate counter flashing, cap flashings, expansion joints, and similar work with modified bitumen roofing work as specified.
 - 7. Coordinate roof accessories, miscellaneous sheet metal accessory items, including piping vents and other devices with the roofing system work.
- H. Flashing Cap Ply: Install flashing cap sheets by the same application method used for the cap ply.
 - 1. Seal curb, wall and parapet flashings with an application of mastic and mesh on a daily basis. Do not permit conditions to exist that will allow moisture to enter behind, around or under the roof or flashing membrane.
 - 2. Prepare all walls, penetrations, expansion joints and where shown on the Drawings to be flashed with required primer at the rate of 100 square feet per gallon. Allow primer to dry tack free.
 - 3. Adhere to the underlying base flashing ply with specified flashing ply adhesive unless otherwise specified. Nail off at a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. from the finished roof at all vertical surfaces.
 - 4. Coordinate counter flashing, cap flashings, expansion joints and similar work with modified bitumen roofing work as specified.
 - 5. Coordinate roof accessories, miscellaneous sheet metal accessory items with the roofing system work.
 - 6. All stripping shall be installed prior to flashing cap sheet installation.
 - 7. Heat and scrape granules when welding or adhering at cut areas and seams to granular surfaces at all flashings.
 - 8. Secure the top edge of the flashing sheet using a termination bar only when the wall surface above is waterproofed, or nailed 4 inches on center and covered with an acceptable counter flashing.
- I. Surface Coatings: Apply roof coatings in strict conformance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- J. Roof Walkways: Provide walkways in areas indicated on the Drawings.

3.6 INSTALLATION EDGE TREATMENT AND ROOF PENETRATION FLASHING

- A. Pre-Manufactured Flash-less Snap-On Metal Edge System:

1. Position base ply of the Built-Up and/or Modified Roofing membrane over the roof edge covering nailers completely, fastening eight (8) inches on center. Install membrane and cap sheet with proper material and procedure according to manufacturer's recommendations. Cap sheet shall stop at the edge of the roof and shall not turn over the edge of the nailer.
2. Prior to installing the base anchor, assure a level plane is present. If not, shim the roof edge surface as required.
3. Extruded base anchor: Apply two 1/4" beads of Green-Lock Sealant XL or equal on the bottom surface of the top flange of the extruded anchor.
4. Set the extruded anchor on the edge and face fasten through pre-punched slots every 18 inches o.c. for 5.75-inch face fascia, and 18 inches o.c. staggered for any fascia size greater than 5.75 inches. Begin fastening 6 inches from ends.
5. Install Green-Lock Sealant XL or equal at the ends of the base frame to prevent water from running between base anchor joints.
6. Install compression seals every 40 inches on center in the slots located at the top of the extruded anchor.
7. Install fascia cover setting the top flange over the top flange and compression seals of the base anchor. Assure compression seals are in place during this process. Beginning on one end and working towards the opposite end, press downward firmly (do not rotate) until "snap" occurs and cover is engaged along entire length of miter.
8. Install splice plate at each end of the base anchor and fascia cover prior to the installation of the next adjacent ten-foot piece.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean-up and remove daily from the site all wrappings, empty containers, paper, loose particles and other debris resulting from these operations.
- B. Remove asphalt markings from finished surfaces.
- C. Repair or replace defaced or disfigured finishes caused by Work of this section.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Provide traffic ways, erect barriers, fences, guards, rails, enclosures, chutes and the like to protect personnel, roofs and structures, vehicles and utilities.
- B. Protect exposed surfaces of finished walls with tarps to prevent damage.
- C. Plywood for traffic ways required for material movement over existing roofs shall be not less than 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
- D. In addition to the plywood listed above, an underlayment of minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) recover board is required on new roofing.
- E. Special permission shall be obtained from the Manufacturer before any traffic shall be permitted over new roofing.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection: Provide manufacturer's field observations at start-up and at intervals of approximately 30 percent, 60 percent and 90 percent completion. Provide a final inspection upon completion of the Work.
 1. Warranty shall be issued upon manufacturer's acceptance of the installation.
 2. Field observations shall be performed by a Sales Representative employed full-time by the manufacturer and whose primary job description is to assist, inspect and approve membrane installations for the manufacturer.

3. Provide observation reports from the Sales Representative indicating procedures followed, weather conditions and any discrepancies found during inspection.
4. Provide a final report from the Sales Representative, certifying that the roofing system has been satisfactorily installed according to the project specifications, approved details and good general roofing practice.

3.10 SCHEDULES

A. Base (Ply) Sheet:

1. 80 mil SBS (Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene) rubber modified roofing base sheet reinforced with a fiberglass scrim, performance requirements according to ASTM D 5147.
 - a. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 0 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 100 lbf/in XD 100 lbf/in
 - 2) 50mm/min. @ -17.78 +/- 2 deg. C MD 17.5 kN/m XD 17.5 kN/m
 - b. Tear Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 110 lbf XD 100 lbf
 - 2) 50mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 489 N XD 444 N
 - c. Elongation at Maximum Tensile, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 0 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 4 % XD 4 %
 - 2) 50mm/min @ -17.78 +/- 2 deg. C MD 4 % XD 4 %
 - d. Low Temperature Flexibility, ASTM D 5147, Passes -40 deg. F (-40 deg. C)

B. Modified Cap (Ply) Sheet:

1. 80 mil SBS (Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene) mineral surfaced, rubber modified roofing membrane with dual fiberglass reinforced scrim. ASTM D6163, Type III Grade S
 - a. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 220 lbf/in XD 220 lbf/in
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 38.5 kN/m XD 38.5 kN/m
 - b. Tear Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 300 lbf XD 300 lbf
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 1335 N XD 1335 N
 - c. Elongation at Maximum Tensile, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. FMD 4.5% XD 4.5%
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 4.5% XD 4.5%
 - d. Low Temperature Flexibility, ASTM D 5147, Passes -30 deg. F (-34 deg. C)

C. Interply Adhesive:

1. Rubberized, polymer modified cold process asphalt roofing bitumen V.O.C. compliant ASTM D 3019. Performance Requirements:
 - a. Non-Volatile Content ASTM D 4479 70%
 - b. Density ASTM D1475 8.9 lbs./gal.
 - c. Viscosity Stormer ASTM D562 400-500 grams
 - d. Flash Point ASTM D 93 100 deg. F min. (37 deg. C)
 - e. Slope: up to 3:12
2. Generic Type III Asphalt: Hot Bitumen, ASTM D 312, Type III steep asphalt having the following characteristics:
 - a. Softening Point 185 deg. F - 205 deg. F
 - b. Flash Point 500 deg. F
 - c. Penetration @ 77 deg. F 15-35 units
 - d. Ductility @ 77 deg. F 2.5 cm

D. Flashing Base Ply:

1. 80 mil SBS (Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene) rubber modified roofing base sheet reinforced with a fiberglass scrim, performance requirements according to ASTM D 5147.
 - a. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 5147

- 1) 2 in/min. @ 0 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 100 lbf/in XD 100 lbf/in
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ -17.78 +/- 2 deg. C MD 17.5 kN/m XD 17.5 kN/m
 - b. Tear Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 110 lbf XD 100 lbf
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 489 N XD 444 N
 - c. Elongation at Maximum Tensile, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 0 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 4 % XD 4 %
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ -17.78 +/- 2 deg. C MD 4 % XD 4 %
 - d. Low Temperature Flexibility, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) Passes -40 deg. F (-40 deg. C)
- E. Flashing Ply Adhesive:
1. Asphalt roofing mastic V.O.C. compliant, ASTM D 4586, Type II trowel grade flashing adhesive.
 - a. Non-Volatile Content ASTM D 4479 70 min.
 - b. Density ASTM D 1475 8.3 lbs./gal. (1kg/l)
 - c. Flash Point ASTM D 93 103 deg. F (39 deg. C)
 2. Generic Type III Asphalt: Hot Bitumen, ASTM D 312, Type III steep asphalt having the following characteristics:
 - a. Softening Point 185 deg. F - 205 deg. F
 - b. Flash Point 500 deg. F
 - c. Penetration @ 77 deg. F 15-35 units
 - d. Ductility @ 77 deg. F 2.5 cm
- F. Flashing Cap (Ply) Sheet:
1. 145 mil SBS (Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene) mineral surfaced, rubber modified roofing membrane with dual fiberglass reinforced scrim. ASTM D6163, Type III Grade S
 - a. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 220 lbf/in XD 220 lbf/in
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 38.5 kN/m XD 38.5 kN/m
 - b. Tear Strength, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 300 lbf XD 300 lbf
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 1335 N XD 1335 N
 - c. Elongation at Maximum Tensile, ASTM D 5147
 - 1) 2 in/min. @ 73.4 +/- 3.6 deg. F MD 4.5% XD 4.5%
 - 2) 50 mm/min. @ 23 +/- 2 deg. C MD 4.5% XD 4.5%
 - d. Low Temperature Flexibility, ASTM D 5147, Passes -30 deg. F (-34 deg. C)
- G. Surfacing:
- a. Flood Coat/ Aggregate:
 - 1) Coal Tar protective roof coating; heavy-bodied, fiber reinforced, cold process polymer modified, coal tar roof coating having the following characteristics
 - a) Weight/ Gallon 9.0 lbs./ gal. (1.07 g/cm³)
 - b) Solids by weight 87%
 - c) Viscosity; Brookfield Heliopath, 2.5 rpm 120,000 cPs
 - d) Roofing Aggregate:
 - 1) Slag:
 - 2) Pea Gravel
 - 3) White Spar

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 7200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof curbs.
 - 2. Equipment supports.
 - 3. Heat and smoke vents.
 - 4. Pipe and duct supports.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
 - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
 - 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.

4. Required clearances.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design roof curbs and equipment supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Adaptable Air Products.
 - b. AES Industries, Inc.
 - c. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
 - d. Conn-Fab Sales, Inc.
 - e. Curbs Plus, Inc.
 - f. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
 - g. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - h. KCC International Inc.
 - i. Kingspan Light + Air, North America.
 - j. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
 - k. LMCurbs.
 - l. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - m. Metallic Products Corp.
 - n. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - o. Pate Company (The).
 - p. Plenums Incorporated.
 - q. Roof Curb Systems.
 - r. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - s. Roof Products, Inc.
 - t. Sunoptics.
 - u. Thybar Corporation.
 - v. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

ROOF ACCESSORIES

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- C. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- D. Heat and Smoke Vent Installation:
 - 1. Install heat and smoke vent so top perimeter surfaces are level.
 - 2. Install and test heat and smoke vents and their components for proper operation according to NFPA 204.
- E. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- F. Security Grilles: Weld bar intersections and, using tamper-resistant bolts, attach the ends of bars to structural frame or primary curb walls.
- G. Roof Walkway Installation:
1. Verify that locations of access and servicing points for roof-mounted equipment are served by locations of roof walkways.
 2. Remove ballast from top surface of low-slope roofing at locations of contact with roof-walkway supports.
 3. Install roof walkway support pads prior to placement of roof walkway support stands onto low-slope roofing.
 4. Redistribute removed ballast after installation of support pads.
- H. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting."
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 7200

PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONAL

SECTION 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 791.
 - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc; SCS2000 SilPruf.
 - c. May National Associates, Inc., a subsidiary of Sika Corporation U.S.; Bondaflex Sil 265 LTS.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; PCS.
 - e. Sika Corporation U.S.; .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.

- c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - e. .
- 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - e. .
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07 9200

SECTION 08 5113 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum windows for exterior locations.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 08 4113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for coordinating finish among aluminum fenestration units.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review and discuss the finishing of aluminum windows that is required to be coordinated with the finishing of other aluminum work for color and finish matching.
 - 3. Review, discuss, and coordinate the interrelationship of aluminum windows with other exterior wall components. Include provisions for anchoring, flashing, weeping, sealing perimeters, and protecting finishes.
 - 4. Review and discuss the sequence of work required to construct a watertight and weathertight exterior building envelope.
 - 5. Inspect and discuss the condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, glazing and fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, and finishes for aluminum windows.

- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum windows.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color specified, 2 by 4 inches in size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving color selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For aluminum windows and components required, showing full range of color variations for finishes, and prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Exposed Finishes: 2 by 4 inches.
 - 2. Exposed Hardware: Full-size units.
- F. Product Schedule: For aluminum windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of aluminum window, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating aluminum windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by test reports and calculations.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.

2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
 - b. Structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, condensation, and air infiltration.
 - c. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of materials and finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - e. Failure of insulating glass.
 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Glazing Units: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Aluminum Finish: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 1. Window Certification: AAMA certified with label attached to each window.
- B. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.30 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.

- C. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of 0.30.
- D. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 52.
- E. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.
- F. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Rated for not less than 30 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E90 and determined by ASTM E413.
- G. Outside-Inside Transmission Class (OITC): Rated for not less than 26 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E90 and determined by ASTM E1332.
- H. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3 for basic protection.
 - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
 - 2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located between 30 feet and 60 feet above grade.

2.3 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Kawneer North America, an Arconic company.
 - 2. U.S. Aluminum Corp.
 - 3. Tublite Inc.
 - 4. Approved Equal: Per Section 01 6000 Product Requirement
- B. Types: Provide the following types in locations indicated on Drawings:
 - 1. Fixed.
 - 2. Casement: Outswing Inswing.
 - 3. Projected, awning.
- C. Window Framing System:

ALUMINUM WINDOWS

1. Kawneer 451UT, fixed framing system or approved equal
 2. Kawneer Trifab 601UT, or approved equal reinforced vertical frames as required to meet wind loading needs. Tall window (Type J),
- D. Frames and Sashes: Aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/1.S.2/A440.
1. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate frames, sashes, and muntins with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Glass: Clear annealed glass, ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
- F. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E2190.
- a. Upper Level window
 - 1) Glass: ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - a) Tint: Clear Clear.
 - b) Kind: Annealed Glass
 - 2) Lites: Two.
 - 3) Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.
 - 4) Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface .
 - b. Lower Level Window
 - 1) Glass: ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - a) Tint: Clear Clear Outboard, Opaque Inboard
 - b) Kind: Annealed Glass
 - 2) Lites: Two.
 - 3) Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.
 - 4) Low-E Coating: Not required.
- G. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock windows, and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged sashes and similar lines of natural water penetration.
- F. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances.
- C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure weathertight window installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
 - 1. Keep protective films and coverings in place until final cleaning.

- C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- D. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 5113

SECTION 09 9113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Steel and iron.
 - 3. Galvanized metal.
 - 4. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:

1. Behr Process Corporation.
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. California Paints.
4. Conco Paints.
5. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore Company.
6. Diamond Vogel Paints.
7. Dulux (formerly ICI Paints); a brand of AkzoNobel.
8. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
9. Duron, Inc.
10. Frazee Paint; Comex Group.
11. Glidden Professional.
12. Kelly-Moore Paint Company Inc.
13. Kwal Paint; Comex Group.
14. M.A.B. Paints.
15. McCormick Paints.
16. Parker Paint; Comex Group.
17. PPG Architectural Coatings.
18. Pratt & Lambert.
19. Rodda Paint Co.
20. Rust-Oleum Corporation; a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
21. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
22. Valspar Corporation - Architectural (Pro).
23. Vista Paint Corporation.
24. Zinsser; Rust-Oleum Corporation.
25. <Insert manufacturer's name>.

- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer[.] [but not less than the following:]
 - 1. SSPC-SP 11.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. All items as indicated on drawings.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
 - 1. Alkyd Floor Enamel System[MPI EXT 3.2D]:
 - a. Prime Coat: Floor enamel, matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Floor enamel, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Floor enamel, alkyd, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)[, MPI #27].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.
 - d. Additive: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.

B. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Alkyd System [MPI EXT 5.1D] [MPI EXT 5.1Q]:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal[, MPI #79].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.
- b. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
- c. Prime Coat: Primer, metal, surface tolerant[, MPI #23].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.
- d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)[, MPI #8].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Alkyd System[MPI EXT 5.3B]:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, cementitious[, MPI #26].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.
- b. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)[, MPI #8].
 - 1) <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.

END OF SECTION 09 9113